

COMPLETE PERSIAN (MODERN PERSIAN/FARSI)

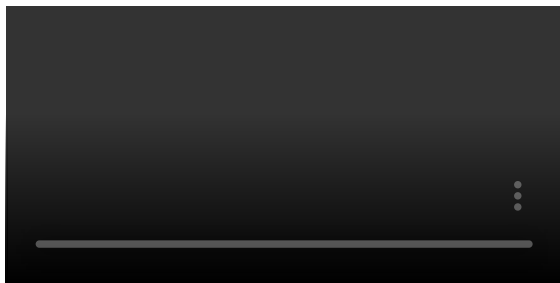
Your total learning package Speak, read and write with confidence Learn the Farsi alphabet Learn the tones and sounds of Farsi Meet and greet Counting Talk about your family Describe people Make comparisons Ask questions Talk about the future Arabic influence on Farsi Find essential vocabulary fast Test yourself and learn more online (www.teachyourself.com)



1 x 336-page book
2 x 70-minute audio CDs (MP3 compatible)
Online content to enrich your learning

**YOUR COMPLETE
SPEAKING, LISTENING,
READING AND
WRITING PACKAGE**

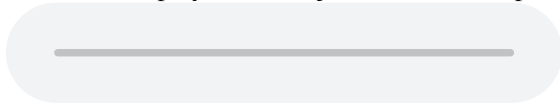
Touch & Listen



Introductory video (1:29)

Welcome to a new way of experiencing the *Teach Yourself* languages range – one that has all of the familiarity of a book but which also integrates vital listening exercises and convenient features. There’s no need to listen to a CD or download audio files. All you need to do is touch and listen.

You will find playback bars just like the example one here located at each dialogue.



Sample Dialogue (1:04)

Just touch the play button to listen to native speakers conversing on scores of current topics. You can pause, rewind or replay the dialogue at any time. And because the audio is part of the book, you don’t need to interrupt your progress.

To use other great features, such as highlighting, copying, making notes or using a dictionary, simply hold your finger down on a word until you get a pop-up menu. You will also find a search function here that allows you to identify where your highlighted word appears throughout the book as well as on Google or Wikipedia.

To navigate easily throughout the book, bookmark pages or change the font, simply tap the top of the book to reveal the navigation and options.

Enjoy the convenience of a full language course at home or on the move, and let the No. 1 brand in language learning guide you every step of the way.



Complete Modern Persian (Farsi)

Narguess Farzad

.....

Table of Contents for Audio Files

[Writing and Pronunciation, Track 1 \(2:56\)](#)
[Writing and Pronunciation, Track 2 \(12:42\)](#)
[Writing and Pronunciation, Exercise 2 \(0:48\)](#)

[Unit 1, Dialogue 1 \(1:04\)](#)
[Unit 1, Dialogue 2 \(1:26\)](#)
[Unit 1, Exercise 1 \(1:00\)](#)
[Unit 1, Exercise 1b \(1:40\)](#)
[Unit 1, Dialogue 3 \(1:08\)](#)
[Unit 1, Dialogue 4 \(2:02\)](#)
[Unit 1, Dialogue 5 \(0:37\)](#)

[Unit 2, Dialogue 1 \(3:35\)](#)
[Unit 2, Exercise 1 \(0:38\)](#)
[Unit 2, Dialogue 2 \(0:52\)](#)
[Unit 2, Exercise 2 \(1:07\)](#)
[Unit 2, Dialogue 3 \(1:39\)](#)

[Unit 3, Exercise 1 \(0:54\)](#)

[Unit 4, Dialogue 1 \(1:23\)](#)
[Unit 4, Dialogue 2 \(0:51\)](#)

[Unit 5, Dialogue 1 \(1:27\)](#)
[Unit 5, Dialogue 2 \(2:03\)](#)
[Unit 5, Dialogue 3 \(1:01\)](#)
[Unit 5, Dialogue 4 \(1:04\)](#)

[Unit 6, Dialogue 1 \(1:34\)](#)
[Unit 6, Dialogue 2 \(1:53\)](#)
[Unit 6, Exercise 3 \(2:14\)](#)
[Unit 6, Exercise 4 \(1:08\)](#)

[Unit 7, Dialogue 1 \(1:20\)](#)
[Unit 7, Dialogue 2 \(0:52\)](#)
[Unit 7, Exercise 2 \(2:27\)](#)

[Unit 8, Dialogue 1 \(2:34\)](#)

[Unit 10, Dialogue 1 \(1:20\)](#)
[Unit 10 Exercise 2 \(1:05\)](#)

[Unit 12, Dialogue 1 \(2:22\)](#)
[Unit 12, Exercise 3 \(2:07\)](#)

[Unit 13, Dialogue 1 \(1:14\)](#)
[Unit 13 Exercise 3 \(1:37\)](#)

[Unit 14, Dialogue 1 \(2:05\)](#)
[Unit 14, Exercise 2 \(1:51\)](#)
[Unit 14, Exercise 3 \(1:20\)](#)

[Unit 15, Dialogue 1 \(1:36\)](#)

[Unit 17, Exercise 1 \(2:42\)](#)

[Unit 18, Dialogue 1 \(1:05\)](#)
[Unit 18, Exercise 1 \(1:40\)](#)

[Unit 19, Dialogue 1 \(0:57\)](#)
[Unit 19, Exercise 3 \(1:08\)](#)

[Unit 20, Dialogue 1 \(1:17\)](#)
[Unit 20, Exercise 3 \(1:42\)](#)

[Unit 21, Track 1 \(1:11\)](#)

[Unit 21, Track 2 \(6:41\)](#)

Table of Contents for Video Files

[Introductory video \(1:29\)](#)

Contents

Meet the author

Only got a minute?

Introduction

Writing and pronunciation

1 Greetings and meeting people

Greeting people, Saying goodbye and good night, Saying 'thank you', 'you're welcome' and 'please', Saying days of the week, months and seasons

2 Numbers

Using and writing cardinal and ordinal numbers and qualifying nouns, Forming plurals, Using 'this', 'that', 'these' and 'those'

3 Grammar reference unit

4 Where are you from? What do you do?

Saying where you are from, Asking how someone is, Giving basic personal information, Saying your nationality and occupation

5 Family, friends and other people

Giving more personal information using pronouns, Describing characteristics using adjectives, Describing family relationships and associations

6 Is Iran's highest mountain higher than Mt Everest?

Forming and using the comparative, Comparing two things, Forming and using the superlative

7 Where is it? What? Whose is it? Why?

Asking questions about time, place and actions, Talking about possession ('mine', 'your', etc.), Using question words, different functions of question words

8 Likes and dislikes

Using the verb 'to have' (past and present, Saying some more about yourself, Talking about your likes and dislikes, The indefinite 'a' and 'one'

9 Grammar reference unit

10 What are you learning?

Using simple verbs, Forming the simple past tense, Using different verbs for situations in the past

11 How did you get here so quickly?

Describing how and where things happened or were done

12 Have you seen Mina's new house?

Recognizing and forming other past tense verbs, Using 'but', Using 'other' with negative verbs

13 An invitation to supper

Recognizing and applying more verbs, Forming and using compound verbs

14 He saw me in the library; the man was seen

Identifying the direct object of verbs, Recognizing and forming transitive and intransitive verbs

15 Going for a quick snack

Forming the present tense, Talking about what is happening now

16 Grammar reference unit

17 In a huff, through the door

Using prepositions ('at', 'to', 'from', 'by', etc.), Putting prepositions into idiomatic use

18 Suggesting a visit to a friend

Asking for things, Asking someone to do something for you, Expressing wishes, hopes and plans

19 Planning a summer trip

Using the proper future tense, Talking about holidays and holiday destinations

20 How are you feeling?

Using idiomatic impersonal verbs, Expressing more likes and dislikes, Describing the various stages of going to sleep, Saying you are tired, Saying you are having a good time

21 Grammar reference unit

[The story of Iran](#)

[Taking it further](#)

[Appendix: complex grammar](#)

[Key to the exercises](#)

[Persian-English glossary](#)

[English-Persian glossary](#)

[Credits](#)

.....

Meet the author

When I left Iran, ostensibly like many of my fellow countrymen intent on pursuing a science-based university education such as engineering, that would equip me for employment in most corners of the world, as well as with rosewater, pistachios and saffron, my suitcase was laden with books of Persian prose and poetry, modern and classical, intriguing, romantic and spiritual.

And they offered me respite whenever I needed to get away from differential equations and inorganic chemistry! Love of Persian poetry in particular eventually led me to take an academic interest in the subject and to explore and re-evaluate the beauty of the Persian language itself, its historic development and its resilience in the face of more than a millennium of onslaught by so many invaders who were all ultimately absorbed into the Persianate world.

I have been teaching Persian language and literature at SOAS and other institutions for nearly twenty years and the thrill of watching my students progress from those hesitant early steps to confident users of the language never loses its magic. Observing their learning process and challenges helped me create what I consider to be a very user-friendly and comprehensive guide to learning Persian. And perhaps that early mathematical training came into its own in structuring this book.

1 Only got a minute?

Persian is one of the oldest living languages of the world and one of the few whose millennium-old prose and poetry is perfectly understood by its modern native speakers and by those who learn it properly as a second language.

Persian is an Indo-European language and therefore speakers of European languages will find it a lot easier to learn than say a Semitic language such as Arabic or a Sinitic language such as Chinese. As a speaker of a European language you already know several Persian words that share a common ancestry with languages such as English or German, and I do not mean European words such as 'tāk̄si' (taxi), 'terāctor' (tractor), 'sinemā' or 'restorān' (restaurant) but rather words such as 'barādar' (brother), 'abrou' (eyebrow), 'dokhtar' (daughter), 'setāre' (star) or phrases such as 'nām-e man' (literally meaning 'name of mine', or 'my name'). Many English words such as 'band', 'beggar', 'builder', 'check-mate', 'pyjamas', 'chinaware', 'tulip', 'taffeta', 'orange', 'lemon', 'spinach', 'aubergine' and 'cash' have their origins in Persian.

Persian is the official language of Iran, the sixteenth-largest country, in the world; as Tajiki, written in the Russian, Cyrillic alphabet, it is the official language of Tajikistan and as Dari it is one of the two official languages of Afghanistan.

As Muslim armies began to conquer their neighbouring lands in the 7th century, the local languages of conquered Iraq, Syria and Egypt, for example, were gradually wiped out and superseded by Arabic. Iran was the only country in that region whose language, Persian, was not replaced by Arabic. Although Persian started to be written in what became the Perso-Arabic script, it retained its solid grammatical features and indeed, after it became a Muslim empire in its own right, it took the Perso-Arabic script and numerous Persian loanwords further east to many parts of the Indian subcontinent, the Malay Archipelago, Brunei (Jawi script) and to the borders of China (Uyghur). Until the 18th century, Persian was the official court and administrative language of India.

Learning the script may strike you as daunting but be assured that it is more difficult for a speaker of Persian to learn English than it would be for you to learn Persian.

.....

Introduction

Persian, known to native speakers as *Farsi*, is the official language of modern-day Iran and is spoken in many parts of Afghanistan and the central Asian republics of Tajikistan and Uzbekistan. Historically, it has been a much more widely understood language in an area ranging from the Middle East to India. Sizeable minority populations in other Persian Gulf countries (Bahrain, Iraq, Oman, the People's Democratic Republic of Yemen and the United Arab Emirates), as well as large diaspora communities in Australia, Canada, Europe, Turkey, and the USA, also speak Persian.

The Persian spoken in Afghanistan is known as *Dari*. The dialectal variation between *Farsi* and *Dari* has been compared with that between European French and Canadian French, or between UK English and English spoken in Australia or South Africa.

The Persian language of Tajikistan is known as *Tajiki*, which is written in Cyrillic. *Tajiki* had minimal contact with other Persian-speaking countries during the Soviet era and contains a large number of Russian and archaic Persian words.

Modern Persian, also known as New Persian, is the linguistic continuation of Middle Persian, itself a successor to Old Persian, the language of ancient Iran up to about 330 BCE. Old, Middle and New Persian represent one and the same language at three stages of its history and development. Persian has its geographical origin in Pārs (now known as Fārs) in central Iran with its famous city of Shiraz, homeland of some of Iran's most famous poets, enchanting rose gardens and lush 'paradise on earth' orchards; this region is, historically speaking, the true home of Persian, although dialectical features of Persian vary as you travel throughout Iran.

About Iran

Iran is one of the few countries that has had a continuing influence in shaping contemporary history and also played a prominent role in the early history of civilization.

Iran's history as a nation of people dates back to the second millennium BCE. In succession to the empires of Assyria and Babylon, Iran became the major power in the Middle East in the sixth century BCE, when the Persian Empire of Cyrus, Xerxes and Darius stretched from the shores of Greece to the edge of India. In the fourth century BCE Iran's hegemony was briefly interrupted by the short-lived dominion of Alexander the Great and his successors, but under the Parthian and Sasanian rulers Iran was again a dominant political power.

Iran's ancient religion, Zoroastrianism, is considered one of the earliest monolithic religions. It has probably influenced mankind more than any other faith, for it had a profound impact on Judaism, Christianity and Islam. Strong adherence to Zoroastrian beliefs and rituals continues among its modern followers in Iran, India and throughout the world.



Historically, the Silk Road, a trade route that made economic exchanges between the West and the East possible and allowed this delicate commodity to reach the markets in Rome, passed through Iran which acted as a major junction between these trading nations.

Iran is also an immensely fascinating modern state. One of the more significant countries of the Middle East with a predominantly young population of nearly 70 million and 16th in size among the countries of the world, Iran is located at one of the most strategically important parts of our planet, linking Central Asia and the Indo-Pakistani subcontinent to Europe.

Iran's role as a trading partner with the countries of the European Community is rapidly increasing. One of the founding members of the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC), Iran is the third largest oil-producing country with one of the largest natural gas reserves and oil tanker fleets.

For veteran travellers in search of the new and the under-explored, Iran is an exciting tourist destination, offering breathtaking contrasts of nature as well as a wealth of ancient and medieval sites. Of the world's 12 places recognized and registered in the 'Index of World Human Heritage' by UNESCO, three are located in Iran making it seventh in the world in terms of possessing significant world heritage sites.

Iran is the home of miniature paintings, calligraphy, exquisite carpets and vibrant glazed tile works and its art remains a popular area of research and study for artists and students alike.

In recent years the success of Iranian films at international festivals, winning hundreds of prestigious awards, worldwide retrospectives of Iranian directors and popular screenings in many major capitals, has placed Iranian cinema firmly on the map, inviting comparison with Italian neo-realism and similar movements in the past decades.

Linguistic development

It is estimated that the Iranian tribes came to settle on the plateau of Iran at the beginning of the first millennium BCE. However, the most ancient traces of Old Persian date back to about 600 BCE. Examples of Old Persian are found in the form of inscriptions of Cyrus the Great and Darius I at Bisitun and Persepolis in Iran, sites that feature as highlights of archaeological tours of Iran.

By 400 BCE Old Persian was heading for extinction and a new system of linguistic expression with relatively greater simplicity was established as the *lingua franca* of the Persian Empire. Middle Persian became the official, religious and literary language of Iran in the third to seventh centuries CE.

By the end of the tenth century CE, some 300 years after the Islamic conquest, New Persian came to be written in the much clearer Arabic alphabet that replaced the old, Aramaic ideograms. Before long, New Persian became spread over a much larger area extending to Xinjiang and to Central and South Asia.

Phonetically and grammatically, the degree of evolution from Old to Middle Persian is considerable, the differences being comparable with differences between Latin and French, for example. On the other hand, New Persian remains in many respects quite close to Middle Persian. For example, more than 60% of Persian vocabulary is identical to the Middle Persian words. This means that most educated speakers of Persian would have some idea of what their forebears of more than a millennium ago might be saying, in the event of a chance meeting. Another distinctive difference is that Old Persian was written from left to right, but both Middle and New Persian are written from right to left.

Does learning Persian help with learning other languages?

In a word, yes! Until recent centuries, Persian was culturally and historically one of the most prominent languages of the Middle East and the Indian subcontinent. Persian is the second language of Islam and was instrumental in the spread of the faith during the reign of the Moguls in the Indian subcontinent. For example, it was an important language during the reign of the Moguls in India, where knowledge of Persian was cultivated and held in very high esteem. To a lesser extent it was instrumental in bringing the Arabic script, known as *Jawi*, to Malaysia. Nowadays, *Jawi* is less commonly used and a Romanized Malay writing script has gained more of an official status. However, *Jawi* is written in the Perso-Arabic script. The use of Persian in the courts of Mogul rulers ended in 1837 when it was banned by officials of the East India Company, but not before the development of a Persian-Indian vernacular. Persian poetry is still a significant part of the literature of the Indo-Pakistani subcontinent.

Very close links between Persian and Urdu, and the presence of numerous Persian words in Turkish, offer a high degree of mutual intelligibility to speakers of these languages and the study of Ottoman Turkish literature without a knowledge of Persian would be meaningless. Malay also contains countless Persian words and for scholars of Malay literature a classical Persian dictionary is often among their most used reference books.

If you are interested in learning other modern Iranian languages, such as Baluchi or Kurdish, knowledge of Persian and the Perso-Arabic script helps. For example, all the languages in the following list are written in this script or were written in it until very recently: Assyrian, Southern Azeri spoken by 20 million people in Iran, Hausa (gradually superseded by Romanized script), Kashmiri, Punjabi of Pakistan, Pashtu, Sindhi and

Uyghur until very recently, although there are now efforts underway to use an adapted Latin alphabet for writing in this language.

How difficult is Persian to learn?

New Persian, that is the language of modern Iran, is written in the Arabic script, but as a language it belongs to the Indo-European family of languages, which includes Sanskrit, Greek, Latin and English. This may in part explain why speakers of European languages find learning Persian relatively easy to begin with. Moreover, some basic vocabulary that is comparable to English, added to similarity of syntax, compensates for the initial strangeness of the alphabet. Words such as *barādar* ‘brother’, *pedar* ‘father’, *mādar* ‘mother’, *setāre* ‘star’, *tārik* ‘dark’, *lab*, ‘lip’, *abru* ‘eyebrow’, *dar* ‘door’, and many more illustrate the common Indo-European genealogy that English and Persian share.

Persian is not a very difficult language for English-speaking people to learn, in contrast to many other major languages of the Middle East or some European languages and is regarded as extremely sonorous and beautiful to listen to.

New Persian contains quite a few foreign words, the majority of which are Arabic, which reflects the extent of cultural and intellectual exchanges between Iran and its neighbours and, of course, the impact of Islam since the seventh century CE.

The mixed character of modern Persian vocabulary is a basic feature of the language. A comparison can be made between Persian and English: the Arabic element in Persian has a similar status to that of Latin and Romance languages in relation to the original Anglo-Saxon of English.

In the first quarter of the 13th century Iran began to experience the unimaginable havoc caused by the brutal invasion of the Mongols. They ruled Iran for more than one hundred years without challenge but over the next century they began to gradually lose their supremacy to independent local rulers. During the years of Mongol rule a large number of Mongolian and Turkic words made their way into Persian. These are mostly words of a military or administrative nature.

From the 18th century, political and commercial contact with Europe increased and many of the Iranian elite travelled to Europe, mostly to Russia, France and Britain, encountering ideas, situations and objects for which there were no Persian names. In the opposite direction, many European visitors, mostly missionaries, merchants and military advisors, arrived and settled in Iran. These exchanges meant that Persian has also borrowed many loanwords from European languages that are fully embedded in the everyday vernacular of Iranians.

Most of these words are originally French and are uttered with a French pronunciation, ranging from the simple *merci* for ‘thank you’ to names of European items of clothing such as *robe de chambre* for ‘dressing gown’, *cravate* for ‘tie’, *deux pièces* ‘ladies’ two-piece’, *imperméable* ‘raincoat’ or ‘rainproof outerwear’, *manteau* ‘thin overcoat’ (the staple outerwear of women in Iran today), *sac* ‘bag’ (pronounced *sāk*), *papillon* ‘bow’ and many others. Other European words invariably accompanied the arrival of modern technologies or utilities in Iran, e.g. words such as telephone, television, radio, film, cinema, theatre, bus, pieces of machinery, decimal units of weights and measures, names of particular European dishes and some medical and modern scientific terminology. Again the majority of these terms are pronounced the French way.

Persian is the official language of Iran and although there are large areas of Iran where Persian is not the mother tongue, e.g. in Azerbaijan, Kurdistan or Luristan, it is *spoken* or understood by most of the urban

population, and for at least half the population (70 million) of Iran, Persian is the native tongue. In Afghanistan, *Dari* enjoys official status along with *Pashtu*.

Study of Persian in Europe

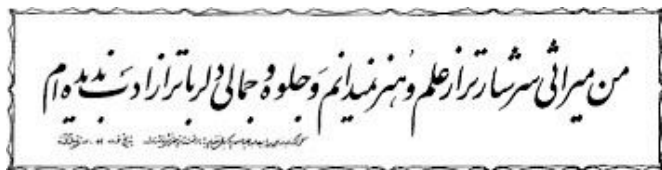
Apart from the early familiarity of a handful of British scholars with the names and works of some medieval Iranian scientists and philosophers, the first steps towards the study of Persian in Europe were taken in the early fourteenth century. Moreover, European travellers, merchants, missionaries and, of course, the envoys and officers of European courts increasingly encountered Persian in the huge geographic sphere where it was spoken or existed as the *lingua franca*.

'Systematic' study of Persian in Europe, however, started in the seventeenth century with a steady increase in the number of Europeans interested in the orient and the literary treasures it offered.

In Britain alone this has resulted in the publication of numerous books of grammar, dictionaries and readers over the past 300 years written by diverse personalities ranging from envoys to adventurers, missionaries and traders, as well as the established scholars and orientalists. Some of these earlier books make for surprisingly good reading and provide windows not only into the linguistic conventions of the time and general approach to study of foreign languages but offer fascinating descriptions of national characteristics of both the Persians and the visitors. The sketches offered in books to assist language acquisition, for example, tell a lot more about the circles in which the European emissaries moved and their main preoccupations than the usefulness of the manuals as a tool for learning Persian.

The importance of immersion in the real language as spoken by its native speakers, however, was recognized early on. The Reverend William St Clair-Tisdall (1859–1928), for example, who served as the Secretary of the Church of England's Church Missionary Society in Esfahan in Iran and who has likened Persian to '*the Italian of the East*', refers to his own difficulties in communicating with Persians. Having studied and learnt to speak Persian in the Panjab in India he found, in the course of attempted conversations with the Persians he met in Bombay, that he was 'almost if not quite unintelligible to them, since many of the words, phrases and idioms he had learnt from the pages of the poet Sa'di and other classical Persian authors had become obsolete and had been superseded by others in the modern language as spoken in Persia itself'. He writes in his introduction to *Modern Persian Conversation Grammar* (1923): 'It was as if a foreigner, having discovered some corner of the world in which English was still spoken by the learned, just as it occurs in the Elizabethan writers and with the pronunciation of that distant day, had learnt the language from them and then tried to converse with the English people of today.' The Reverend St Clair-Tisdall concludes that the conversation of such a novice 'would seem at once stilted and vulgar, and it would amuse everyone with whom he came in contact'. It is therefore essential for learners of modern Persian to try and have as much contact with native speakers or at least make use of the innumerable websites that allow the learner near immersion in the culture, music and media of Persian-speaking countries, as well as ever-increasing numbers of sites that offer on-line teaching resources that complement grammar books and readers.

Basic characteristics of Persian



Nastaligh calligraphy. Quotations from Imam Ali Ibn-Abi Talib

Persian is written from right to left in the cursive, that is joined-up, Perso-Arabic script. This script can be most ornamental and, in this respect, Iranians more than others who use this script have made the art of calligraphy and refined penmanship their own. Towards the end of this introduction I say a little about some of the traditional instruments that are used for Persian calligraphy. The so-called Perso-Arabic script has innovations that accommodates sounds such as *ch*, as in ‘chair’ or *p* as in ‘Paris’ that do not exist in Arabic but are part of Persian.

The Persian alphabet has 32 letters. All of these, with the exception of the first letter, *alef* آ are consonants. However, two of the letters of the alphabet have a dual existence and can function as symbols for long vowels too. These are the letters ‘v’ و and ‘y’ ی that can respectively represent the long vowels ‘u’ and ‘i’.

It is important, however, to point out early on that seven letters of this alphabet are best described as one-way letters and when it comes to writing down the words, they behave differently from the other 25 letters. I shall go over this point in much more detail later on as we start learning the script.

There are *no capital letters* in the Perso-Arabic script.

For reasons of simplicity I shall suggest that there are six vowels in Persian: three long and three short vowels.

Unlike English, the three short vowels are not written down. However, to help you learn to read properly all short vowels will be marked in the initial units of this book by using a system of diacritics or ‘pointing’ with small indicating signs. All long vowels are and must be written in with the use of the ‘a⁻’, which is the first letter of the alphabet or the other consonants that represent ‘i’ and ‘u’.

Persian is remarkably simple in terms of formal grammar. There is no gender, no noun inflection, no adjectival agreement and no irregularity in verbal conjugation. However, rather like English in this respect, what Persian lacks in inflection it more than makes up for in syntactic and idiomatic complexity. If you know any Iranians, you will know that they hardly ever use straightforward, simple prose in English so you can imagine what it must be like when they speak Persian! But do not despair: acquiring a sound, basic foundation in the language will enable you gradually to expand and develop your knowledge of Persian and appreciate the ornate vernacular, which is adored and used to great effect by all Iranians.

This brings us to the second major hurdle, which is the acquisition of vocabulary, but that is true of any language where the students start from the absolute beginning – remember as an Indo-European speaker you have a head start with quite a lot of vocabulary.

Look at the following examples of commonly used Persian and English words with Indo-European connections:

English Persian

better	<i>behtar</i>
bezoar	<i>pādzahr</i>
body	<i>badan</i>
candy	<i>qand</i>
cow	<i>gāv</i>
dark	<i>tarik</i>
dental	<i>dandān</i>
door	<i>dar</i>
drug	<i>dāru</i> (orig: <i>dārug</i>)
graft	<i>gereftan</i>
group	<i>gorouh</i>
intern	<i>andarun</i>
iron	<i>āhan</i>
juvenile	<i>javān</i>
physician	<i>pezeshk</i>
star	<i>setāre</i>

By taking a certain few rules into account you will see a closer similarity still between the words above. The first rule is that, unlike English, no Persian word begins with two consonants. Therefore, a Persian speaker would find the English words such as ‘brown’, ‘script’ or ‘stop’ quite odd. The order of appearance of vowels and consonants in Persian are either vowel–consonant–vowel, e.g. ‘above’, consonant–vowel–consonant, e.g. ‘got’ or vowel–consonant–consonant, e.g. ‘act’. So, to the Iranian ear the word ‘must’ is OK but ‘star’ is not. However, if you separate the ‘s’ and the ‘t’ of ‘star’ by the vowel ‘e’ you will get the equivalent Persian word *setāre*, which is how the word is pronounced.

The other observation is that over the course of the development of Indo-European languages certain letters in one group have been changed by another. For example, ‘f’ and ‘v’, or ‘d’ and ‘t’ seem to replace one another in words that evidently have a common root. For example, the English ‘dark’ becomes even closer to the Persian *tārik* if we replace the ‘d’ with the ‘t’.

First steps

To begin with, this course will emphasize the written element of Persian until the user comes to grips with the letters and reading the script and feels able to follow the fundamental, elementary aspects of grammar. However, this will not be done at the expense of the spoken tongue, i.e. the colloquial language that reflects the day-to-day exchanges of all levels of society in Iran. I have attempted to familiarize the user of this book with educated contemporary, standard Persian as written and spoken in Tehran and broadcast to the world in radio, TV and used in many Iranian films.

Intonation

One of the hardest things about learning a new language is trying to copy the voice pitch and the intonation of the native speakers. I think it would be fair to say that learning to speak like an Iranian is nowhere near as difficult as learning to speak like an Italian, but one or two hints may be helpful.

In most Persian words the stress is on the last syllable. In affirmative sentences there is usually a rise in the pitch just before the verb, but in negative sentences the pitch rises on the negative verb.

Question words in Persian, 'how', 'who', 'where', 'why' and others, normally carry the stress which is opposite of what happens in English. In fact, stress on the question words in English can sound threatening and gives the impression of aggression. In Persian, however, it is not unusual to put the stress on the interrogatives.

Script

Nastaliq, the style of writing most popular in Iran, is an art in which laws of mathematics and nature are obeyed. It enables the artist to create a beautiful piece of calligraphy by using several forms of the same letter or by employing various forms of the words and using them in different compositions. With its mystifying beauty, *nastaliq* has closely accompanied Persian poetry and has played an important role in communicating the poetic concepts to the readers. Looking at the works of calligraphers, both modern and traditional, reveals that *nastaliq* has served both literature and mysticism. In fact, compared to other poets, the poems of Hafiz and Rumi have most often been used by artists. In Persian culture and art, poetry, traditional music and calligraphy are intimately related and are complementary elements.

The most basic tools of a calligrapher are his reed pens known as *qalam* and his ink. The pens are traditionally carved from the reeds taken from the reed beds of southern Iran, on the shores of the Persian Gulf. Calligraphers then use their penknives or very sharp blades to cut the nib and to trim it until the desired shape of the pen is achieved. The pens range in length from 20 cm to almost 30 cm and are 1–1½ cm thick.

Calligraphers develop a profound knowledge and almost an instinct of how to spot the best cane suitable for a good pen, how to trim the nib and, finally, to create the perfect writing instrument. A good pen is treasured and rarely is it lent to another person as its use over the years almost moulds it to the demands and expectations of its owner.

Inks can be in many colours including black, brown, yellow, red, blue, white, silver and gold and, with the aid of new technology and changing trends in writing styles, more vivid coloured inks are also being developed. In the old days, many calligraphers refined the formulas of making the best ink but their recipes, based on complex chemical experiments, were usually carefully guarded secrets.

The arrival of paper in Iran from China in the mid-eighth century was a turning point in the art of writing. Paper was made from cotton and occasionally from silk.


Geometric principles play an essential role in Persian calligraphy, which adheres very strictly to the rules of dimension and proportion. The *alef* provides a unit of measure for all the other letters of the alphabet.

The size of the dot is also of crucial importance. The dot is a diamond or square impression made by pressing the nib of the pen on to paper.

Depending on the calligrapher and the style of the script he is working on, the height of the *alef* can vary from three to 12 dots. The width of the *alef* is usually equivalent to one dot.

You will, of course, find that your initial attempts at handwriting will look shaky and uncertain. Perhaps the letters you write down may not always look the same or uniform, but don't lose heart. It will take a while before you achieve a good, legible style of writing. Even those Iranians who pride themselves in having nice handwriting will balk at the prospect of writing with traditional writing tools, which is the ultimate test of being able to write accurately and beautifully.

This is perhaps as good a place as any to return to the purpose of writing this book, tempting as it is to go on about the artistic aspects of the written language. This is perhaps an appropriate moment also to remind the readers that this book does not promise to teach its users all the complex aspects of the Persian language. That would be a foolish promise to make and to my knowledge no book has ever achieved it. Later sections of the book give you glimpses of the complex grammar, and the 'Taking it further' section will point you in the direction of further academic studies of Persian. My aim is to whet your appetite sufficiently and to give you enough of a solid grounding to persuade you that Persian is really not a very difficult language to learn and to entice you to use this book as the basis for a more fundamental study of the language.

The following icon  indicates that the material is on the audio. Dialogues and listening texts feature throughout this book. Simply tap the playback bar to listen, pause or repeat.

The opening lines of the preface that Alexander Finn (1847–1919) wrote for his *Persian for Travellers* in 1885 as an aid 'to those holding intercourse with the natives', offers an apt ending for this introduction: 'This is a work of no pretensions.' However, I hope it will equip you on the start of a journey of discovery into one of the East's most enchanting languages and the immense body of writing that is written in this language.

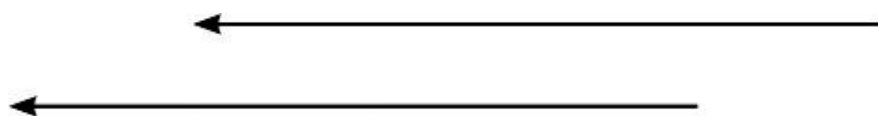
.....

Writing and pronunciation

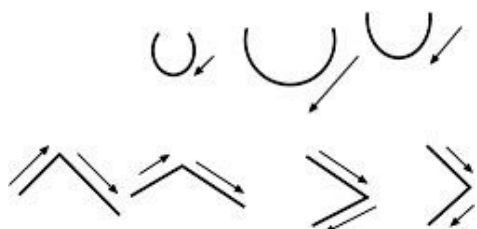
How to write Persian

Before we even look at the alphabet let us first try the following exercises:

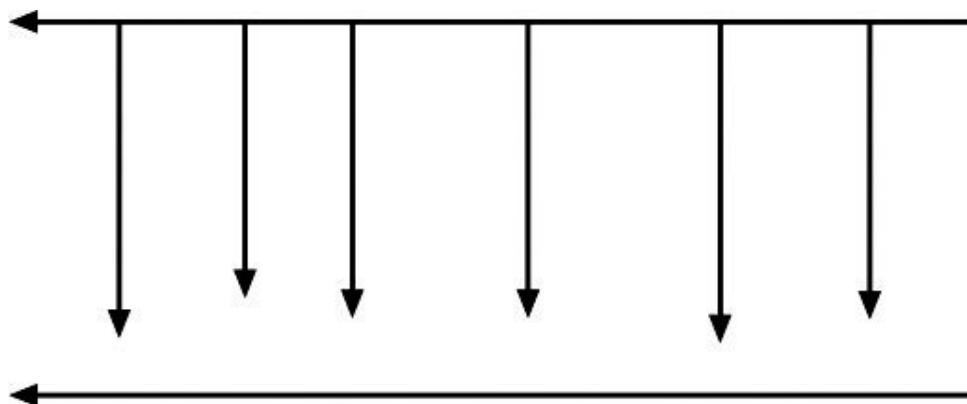
Can you draw straight, horizontal lines from right to left?



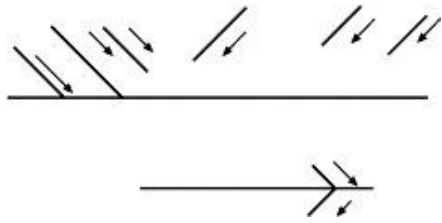
Can you draw semi-circles and parts of triangles going clockwise?



Try sketching a railway line by drawing the tracks from right to left and then a series of connecting sleepers, vertically from top to bottom and from the bottom to the top.



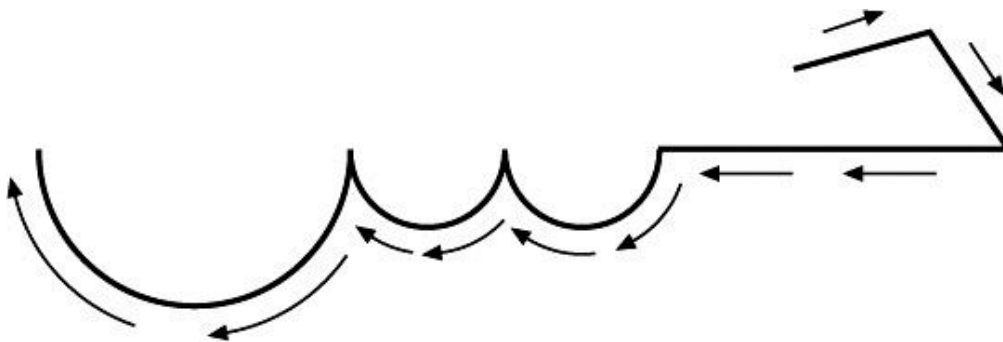
Can you do back slashes and the mirror image above the line and can you draw lines meeting at an angle in one sweep of the pen, like the tip of an arrow?



How about a series of small, connecting semi-circles, again going from right to left as in the edges of a doily?



Can you make a combination of the above movements without taking your pen off the paper?



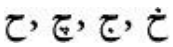
If you find these exercises easy, then you are ready to start learning the alphabet.

To begin with, you should try to write the full, unconnected form of the letters and don't worry about other forms until you are confident about copying these full shapes. Luckily, the Perso-Arabic letters of the alphabet fall into patterns and different number of dots distinguish one letter from another in the same pattern.

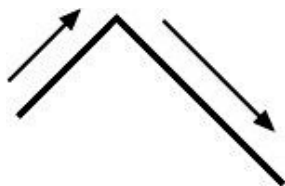
Start with the opening letter which is the vertical letter ا, آ, the *alef* which is drawn downwards. Next, try copying out the 'horizontal' group of letters that look like 'plates' with tiny curved edges: ب, پ, ت, ث. To write these out first try to draw horizontal lines from the right to the left. Then repeat this movement but this time start with a tiny downward stroke for the right-hand edge of the 'plate', about two millimetres in length, and continue horizontally along the lines of the paper for about seven or eight millimetres and finish the letters with an up-swoop for the left-hand edge, equal in size and mirror image of the right-hand edge. The movement of your pen should be clockwise.



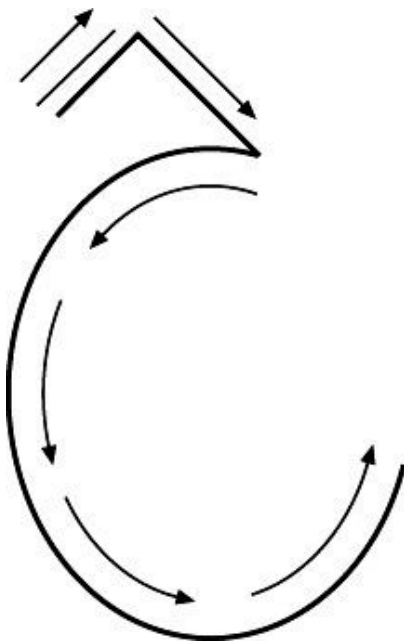
Don't forget the dots!

Now try your hands at the next pattern of letters that look like 'hooks': 

To write these out you should start with drawing the two sides of a tiny triangle or joining a forward slash on to a backward slash, moving your pen in the clockwise direction. This will help you to get the top of the 'hook' right. As you see the two sides need not be of equal length:



Once you have mastered this movement try combining this shape with the curved bottom which looks like a capital 'C' letter. The letter 'C' shape has to be drawn in an anti-clockwise movement, as it is in English. The size is over-exaggerated to make it easier for you to follow the movement:



The four 'hooked' letters of the Persian alphabet are a combination of clockwise and anti-clockwise movements. The next 11 letters are all written with a clockwise movement until you get to the two Arabic letters ع and غ. These two letters that look like a lower-case letter 'c' sitting on top of a capital 'C' are written with an anti-clockwise movement. After these two letters, the rest of the alphabet is written in the clockwise direction.

Learning the order of the alphabet

There is no magic formula for remembering the names of the Persian letters in order. However, occasionally they do fall into a familiar ‘European’ pattern as in the sequence of **و، ن، م، ل** that is similar to ‘l’, ‘m’, ‘n’, (o), if you take **و** in its guise as the vowel ‘o’ and not the consonant ‘v’.

Once you have familiarized yourself with the full forms of the letters, try copying out the initial versions. All you need to do to get the initial form is to ‘chop’ the tail end off the full forms, from the left-hand side. The initial forms are those that appear at the beginning of a word. However, don’t forget to leave the identifying dots intact.

For example, if you cut the tail end off the letter **ب** you will get **ب**. Similarly after cutting the tail end off the letter **چ** you should be left with **چ**. The initial form of a letter such as **گ** should look like **گ**.

For the letters **س، ش، ص، ض** you will lose the deep final curve and should replace this with an extra ‘tooth’:

س → **س**
ض → **ض**

Reminder

- 1 Never forget to put in the all-important dots, otherwise the letters will be meaningless shapes.
- 2 Seven letters of the alphabet never change their shape as nothing can be attached to their left side. I refer to these letters as ‘one-way’ letters. They are: **آ** or **ا** (*ā*), **د** (*d*), **ذ** (*z*), **ر** (*r*), **ز** (*z*), **ژ** (*zh*), **و** (*v* or *o/u*).

These letters can be connected to a preceding letter from the right side, but will not join on to any letter that comes after them. For example you can have a word like **با** (*bā*) but in a word like **آب** (*āb*), the **ب** (*b*) cannot be joined to the left-hand side of **آ** (*ā*).

- 3 No Persian word begins with two consonants. Now you know why most Iranians – and many Arabs for that matter – who start learning English find it hard to pronounce words like ‘start’, ‘brown’, ‘plastic’, ‘try’, ‘street’, ‘square’ or ‘bus stop’ and instead have to say *estar, pelastic, teray, esquare* or *sequare* or *bus-estop*. A sequence of consonants can only appear after an initial vowel or in the middle or at the end of a word.

Writing and Pronunciation, Track 1 (2:56)

The following table gives you the full list of the Persian alphabet including the names of the letters and the phonetic pronunciation.

Take your time and spend a good few days just tracing the letters of the alphabet to get the shape right and then try to remember which consonant they represent.

		Connected	Connected	Connected	Final, full form
Sound in English	Name of letter	End of word or attached to previous letter	Middle or in between two letters	Initial or followed by another letter	Unconnected, standing alone
<i>ā</i> and initial vowels <i>a, e, o</i>	<i>alef*</i>	ل...	ل..	ا	ا or ا*
<i>b</i>	<i>be</i>	ب...	ب..	ب	ب
<i>p</i>	<i>pe</i>	پ...	پ..	پ	پ
<i>t</i>	<i>te</i>	ت...	ت..	ت	ت
<i>s</i>	<i>se</i>	ث...	ث..	ث	ث
<i>j</i>	<i>jim</i>	ج...	ج..	ج	ج
<i>ch</i>	<i>che</i>	چ...	چ..	چ	چ
<i>he</i>	<i>he</i>	ح...	ح..	ح	ح
<i>kh</i> or <i>x</i>	<i>khe</i>	خ...	خ..	خ	خ
<i>d</i>	<i>dāl*</i>	د...	د..	د	د
<i>z</i>	<i>zāl*</i>	ذ...	ذ..	ذ	ذ
<i>r</i>	<i>re*</i>	ر...	ر..	ر	ر
<i>z</i>	<i>ze*</i>	ز...	ز..	ز	ز

zh (as in 'measure')	zhe*	ژ...	ژ..	ژ	ژ
s	sin	سس...	سس..	سس	س
sh	shin	شش...	شش..	شش	ش
s	sād	صص...	صص..	صص	ص
z	zād	ضض...	ضض..	ضض	ض
t	tā	طط...	طط..	طط	ط
z	zā	ظظ...	ظظ..	ظظ	ظ
'(a)	'ain	عع...	عع..	عع	ع
gh	ghain	...	غغ..	غغ	غ
f	fe	فف...	فف..	فف	ف
q	qāf	قق...	قق..	قق	ق
k	kāf	کک...	کک..	کک	ک
g	gāf	گگ...	گگ..	گگ	گ
l	lām	لل...	لل..	لل	ل
m	mim	مم...	مم..	مم	م
n	nun	نن...	نن..	نن	ن
v, w, u and o	vāv*	وو...	وو..	وو	و
h	he	هه...	هه..	هه	ه
y, i	ye	یی...	یی..	یی	ی

*The seven letters with an asterisk next to them are called 'one-way' letters in this book and this means that no letter of the alphabet can be joined on to their left-hand side.

Insight

Try writing on lined paper and with a pencil rather than with a biro and such like until you get a sense of the proportion of the letters.

The grid below is provided as a 'tracing template' so that you can practise writing the individual letters of the alphabet.

ا	ا	أ	أ	أ	آ	آ	آ
ب	ب	ب	ب	ب	ب	أ	أ
ث	ث	ت	ت	ت	ث	ب	ب
ج	ج	ح	ح	ح	ج	ت	ت
ح	ح	خ	خ	خ	ح	ج	ج
ز	ز	ر	ر	ر	ز	د	د
س	س	ش	ش	ش	س	ز	ز
ض	ض	ص	ص	ص	ض	ش	ش
ع	ع	ظ	ظ	ظ	ع	ص	ص
ف	ف	ق	ق	ق	ف	ظ	ظ

ق	ق	ق	ق	ق	ق	ق	ق
ر	ر	ر	ر	ر	ر	ر	ر
ن	ن	ن	ن	ن	ن	ن	ن
ه	ه	ه	ه	ه	ه	ه	ه
ط	ط	ط	ط	ط	ط	ط	ط

Exercise 1

Can you write the following letters as one word?

- ۱ ب + ا + پ + ا
۲ ب + ا + ز + ا + ر
۳ پ + ر + س + ت + ا + ر
۴ آ + و + ا + ز
۵ م + ا + ش + ی + ن
۶ ه + ز + ا + ر
۷ م + ر + ج + ا + ن
۸ ن + ا + ظ + م
۹ ا + ز + د + ر
۱۰ م + ق + ی + ا + س
۱۱ ا + س + ت + ر + ا + ح + ت
۱۲ ق + ا + ج
۱۳ و + ر + ا + ث
۱۴ ک + و + ج + ک
۱۵ خ + ی + ا + ب + ان
۱۶ گ + ا + ر + ی
۱۷ م + و + ق + ع
۱۸ س + و + س + ک
۱۹ ل + ا + ک + پ + ش + ت
۲۰ م + و + ش + ک
۲۱ ا + ص + ف + ه + ا + ن
۲۲ ض + ر + ر
۲۳ ظ + ه + ر
۲۴ ط + ا + و + و + س
۲۵ ی + و + ا + ش + ک + ی
۲۶ ک + ت + ا + ب + خ + ا + ن + ه
۲۷ ه + م + س + ا + ی + ه
۲۸ ق + ه + و + ه
۲۹ ر + ا + د + ا + ر
۳۰ س + ف + ی + ر



Example of 'chalipaa' style of Persian nastaligh calligraphy

Introduction to learning the Persian vowels

Writing and Pronunciation, Track 2 (12:42)

Try reading the following words that contain examples of Persian vowels. This is just an exercise to help you read the Persian words and familiarize you with the sound of the vowels, so don't worry about the meaning of the words.

Try reading them first and then listen to the audio and repeat. Remember to read the words from the right to the left!

Long vowels

Let us start with the long vowels.

Long vowel *u*, و

The first long vowel in the following words is the *u* sound as in 'woo' or 'zoo' or the long *u* in 'rude'. This long vowel is always written in the script and is denoted by the letter و, the 30th letter of the alphabet. This vowel is written as *u* in English transliteration, to demonstrate its pronunciation.

Long vowel *u* in the middle of a word

lace *tur* تور ← blind *kur* کور ←
joy/salty *shur* شور light *nur* نور
force *zur* زور burning *suz* سوز
ant *mur* مور long *dur* دور

Long vowel *i*, ی (ی)

Next is the long vowel *i* as in 'deep' or 'seat'. This vowel must be written in the script and is denoted by the last letter of the Persian alphabet which is ی. In this section, we are looking at the long vowels as they appear in the *middle* of the word so the middle form of the letter ی which is ی, is used for this medial 'i' sound. We use the letter *i* to transliterate this Persian vowel in English.

Long vowel *i* in the middle of a word

arrow *tir* تیر ← twenty *bist* بیست ←

apple *sib* سیب it's not there *nist* نیست
 wire/silver *sim* سیم half *nim* نیم
 before *pish* پیش made of silver *simin* سیمین

Long vowel *ā*, آ

Finally, let us look at the long vowel *ā*, as in the English words 'father', 'cart' or 'sarnie'. Like the other two long vowels, the long *ā* must be written in the script by using the middle form of the first letter of the alphabet **آ**, which is **ا**. The long vowel **آ** is shown as *ā* in English transliteration.

Long vowel *ā* in the middle of a word

unclear *tār* تار ← work *kār* کار ←
 (boy's name) *dārā* دارا snake *mār* مار
 machine *māshin* ماشین (girl's name) *sārā* سارا
 last year *pār-sāl* پارسال year *sāl* سال

Now let us look at examples of long vowels appearing at the beginning of a word. This means looking at words with the *initial long vowels* *ā*, *i*, and *u*.

Initial long vowel *ā*, آ

The following words all start with the vowel *ā*. Some contain the long vowel *ā* in the middle of the word, too. The long vowel *ā* that appears at the beginning of the word must always be written as **آ**, that means it has to have its little hat:

sun *āftāb* آفتاب ← water *āb* آب ←
 free *āzād* آزاد that *ān* آن
 gentleman *āqā* آقا harm *āzār* آزار
 prosperous *ābād* آباد they *ānhā* آنها

Insight

Persian long vowel *ā*, as in the English word ‘car’, is a little difficult to copy but is distinctly different from an ‘o’ or the short ‘a’. Listen to the audio or native Farsi speakers to get the right sound.

Initial long vowel *i*

The initial long vowel *i* sounds like the ‘ea’ in ‘eat’ or ‘ease’ or the ‘ee’ in ‘seen’. In the Persian script the initial long vowel *i* is written in as **ای**:

here *injā* اینجا ← this *in* این ←
Iran *irān* ایران stop *ist* ایست
(boy’s name) *iraj* ایرج faith *imān* ایمان
they *ishān* ایشان to provide *ijād* ایجاد

Initial long vowel *u*

Well, luckily for all learners of the Persian language I can think of only one word that begins with the long vowel *u*, as in ‘ooze’ or ‘oodles’ – you see there are not many English words beginning with ‘u’ sound either. The initial long vowel *u* is written as **او** in the Persian script. This one and only common Persian word that is written with an initial long vowel *u* happens to be just that: **او** which is a third person, singular pronoun, meaning ‘he’ or ‘she’:

he, she *u* او ←

There are three clear *final long vowels* in Persian that must be written in the script and are represented by the letter **ا** *ā* as in ‘papa’ or ‘Toyota’, **ی** *i* as in ‘see’, ‘me’ or ‘happy’ and **و** *u* as in ‘shoe’, ‘you’ or ‘goo’. These vowels can be attached to the previous letter or they may stand alone, depending on which letter precedes them.

Final long vowel *ā* ا

air/weather *havā* هوا ← father *bābā* بابا ←
 alone *tanhā* تنها up/high *bālā* بالا
 they *ānhā* آنها here *injā* اینجا
 acceptable *ravā* روا to watch *tamāshā* تماشا

Final long vowel *i* ی

who *ki* کی ← tea-pot *quri* قوری ←
 play/game *bāzi* بازی what *chi* چی
 carpet *qālī* قالی greyhound *tāzi* تازی
 tray *sini* سینی taxi *tāksi* تاکسی

Final long vowel *u* و

knee *zānu* زانو ← upper arm *bāzu* بازو ←
 blanket *patu* پتو lady *bānu* بانو
 drug *dāru* دارو scent *bu* بو
 conversation *goftogu* گفتگو broom *jāru* جارو

Short vowels

The three Persian short vowels are not usually written in the script; however, to make it easier for learners to read the words, or to avoid ambiguity later on, a system of markers known as diacritics is used and these symbols are placed either above or below a consonant, such as *n*, to indicate whether this consonant is read as, for example, *na*, or *ne* or *no*.

Short vowel markers

The marker used to indicate the short vowel *a*, as in ‘at’ or ‘apple’, is a tiny forward slash (ـَ) placed above the consonant that comes before the vowel, i.e. placed above the letter of the alphabet that carries this vowel.

For example, *na* will be written as نَ, while *nā*, with a long vowel will be written as نَا. Try reading the following examples of words that contain the short vowel *a* ـَ:

Short vowel *a* in the middle of a word

axe *tabar* تَبَر ← I *man* مَن ←
 notebook/office *daftar* دَفْتَر only *faqat* فَطَط
 night *shab* شَب news *khabar* خَبَر
 (boy’s name) *hasan* حَسَن cold *sard* سَرَد

Short vowel *e*

The short vowel *e* as in ‘egg’, is also indicated by a small marker in the shape of a tiny forward slash, however, the *e* is placed *underneath* the letter of the alphabet (ـِ) that carries its sound. So if a consonant such as *n* is followed by an *e* this will be indicated in writing as: نِ *ne*.

Short vowel *e* in the middle of a word

Examples of words where the short vowel *e* appears in the middle position:

like *mesl* مِثَل ← heavens *sepehr* سِپَهَر ←
 redcurrant *zereshk* زَرِشَك red *qermez* قَرْمِز
 heart *del* دِل worm *kerm* كَرِم
 winter *zemestān* زِمِسْتَان eyes *cheshm* چِشَم

Short vowel *o*

The third short vowel is *o*, pronounced as in ‘old’, ‘hope’ and ‘boat’. This vowel is marked by placing a tiny comma sign (ـُ) above the letter that carries it. For example the letter *n* followed by the vowel *o* looks like this in Persian: نُ.

Short vowel *o* in the middle of a word

Here are some examples of words that contain the vowel *o* in the medial position:

full <i>por</i> پُر	←	big <i>bozorg</i> بزرگ	←
bird <i>morgh</i> مرغ		large <i>dorosht</i> درِشت	
camel <i>shotor</i> شتر		morning <i>sobh</i> صبح	
fistful <i>mosht</i> مشت		he/she said <i>goft</i> گُفت	

We have looked at the short vowels appearing mid-word, but what about words that begin with a short vowel? How are these *initial short vowels* indicated?

One very important point to remember is that although short vowels are generally not represented in the Persian script, the initial short vowels must be written in. The three initial short vowels in Persian are:

ا *a*, as in ‘apple’ or ‘aspect’

اِ *e*, as in ‘egg’ or ‘end’

اُ *o*, as in ‘old’ or ‘open’

Try reading the following examples of words beginning with short vowels.

Initial short vowel *a* ا

(boy’s name) <i>ahmad</i> أَحْمَد	←	clouds <i>abr</i> اَبْر	←
is <i>ast</i> اَسْت		horse <i>asb</i> اَسْب	
frown <i>akhm</i> اَخْم		origin <i>asl</i> اَصْل	

eyebrow *abru* اَبْرُو

brocade/Atlantic atlas اَطْلَسْ

Initial short vowel e اِ

exams *emtehān* اِمْتِحَان

this year *emsāl* اِمْسَال

kindness *ehsān* اِحْسَان

possibility *emkān* اِمْكَان

← name *esm* اِسْم ←

tonight *emshab* اِمَشَب

contact *ertebāt* اِرْتِبَاط

today *emruz* اِمْرُوز

Initial short vowel o اُو

hope *omid* اُمِيد ← bus *otobus* اُتُوْبُوس ←

camp/Urdu *ordu* اُرْدُو master *ostād* اُسْتَاذ

room *otāq* اُتَاق pattern *olgu* اُلْغُو

steady *ostovār* اُسْتُوَار he/she/it fell *oftād* اُفْتَاد

Insight

The written form of all words beginning with a vowel in Persian will start with the vertical sign for the letter alef 'ا' which will either be followed by an 'ی' or an 'و' or will have a ه for a hat to denote 'ای' or 'او' or 'آ'; or, will have one of the three short-vowel markers 'اَ، اِ، اُ' to denote 'a', 'o' or 'e' vowels. These short vowel-markers are never used in writing by native or advanced speakers and will gradually be omitted as learners progress.

If a word in Persian ends with a *final short vowel*, then this vowel must be represented in the script. The final short vowels are not written by using the usual markers of ; instead we 'borrow' two letters of the alphabet to show that the word ends with an *a*, an *e* or an *o*. We use the final forms of the letter ه/ه, representing also 'h', to indicate the presence of a vowel *a* or *e* at the end of the word. Final short vowels 'a' and 'e' are not too common in English, except in words such as 'visa' or 'cobra' (and perhaps a casual pronunciation of 'footballer' where the 'r' is almost omitted!). But Italian pronunciation of words like 'donna' and 'casa' or 'bene' and 'nome' may give you some idea of what the final short vowels *a* and *e* sound like in Persian.

To show the presence of the vowel *o* at the end of the word, we 'borrow' the letter و 'v' and pronounce it as something between an 'o' and an 'ow'. Final short vowel 'o' sounds like 'go' or 'hello' or 'woe' or 'toe'.

Final short vowel *a* —

Fortunately, in the educated Tehran accent that has been used as the model in this book, there is only one common word that ends with the sound 'a', and that is the informal word for 'no': نه *na*. (Bear in mind that in many rural and regional dialects many words that end with an 'e' sound in Persian are pronounced with an 'a' ending.)

Final short vowel *e* — (ه ه)

Note that in the following examples, I have used the marker ه at the end here to indicate the presence of the short vowel *e*, but this is not usually done in writing:

house *khāne* خانه ← letter *nāme* نامه ←

fruit *mive* میوه

child *bache* بچه

greenery *sabze* سبزه

cooked *pokhte* پخته

simple *sāde* ساده

small garden *bāghche* باغچه

Note: The ‘helper’ letters ه ه (h acting as e) and و (v acting as o) are only read as final short vowels e and o when they come after a consonant; however, if they follow a vowel, they are then read as proper consonants

h and v. Example: بادِه *bāde* (final short vowel e) but ماه *māh* (proper ‘h’ ending). Similarly, گو *gu* (و acting as vowel u) but گاو *gāv* (proper v ending).

Final short vowel o – (او) (almost an ‘ow’)

There are not many common words in Persian that end with this o sound:

you (sing.) *to* تو ← vine *mo* مو ←

two *do* دو ← barley *jo* جو ←

pilau rice *polo* پلو ← don’t go! *naro* نرو ←

listen *bishno* بشنو ← become *sho* شو ←

Exercise 2

Writing and Pronunciation, Exercise 2 (0:48)

a Read the following words out loud:

پا - پارو - سوپ - کاشی - کتاب - کوچه - میخ - صابون -

مریم - آقا - شیراز - افغان - امروز - ایزد - آشک - طاقچه -

کوشش - آرامگاه - کاغذ - اصفهان - ایجاب - عقاب

b Copy out the words used in this unit to practise your writing skills further.

Exercise 3

Write the following words in Persian, paying attention to the vowels. Remember, short vowels are not written unless they appear at the beginning or the end of a word. Try to indicate their presence, however, by using the three little markers.

- 1 *farḍā*
- 2 *palang*
- 3 *boshqāb*
- 4 *āchār*
- 5 *ātaš*
- 6 *vājeb*
- 7 *namak*
- 8 *kuchak*
- 9 *akbar*
- 10 *zohr*
- 11 *gusht*
- 12 *khāne*
- 13 *qahve*
- 14 *zard*
- 15 *havā*
- 16 *emshab*
- 17 *irland*
- 18 *shīrin*
- 19 *dokhtar*
- 20 *bist*
- 21 *bimārestān*
- 22 *shomā*
- 23 *hadaf*
- 24 *'amu*
- 25 *khāle*

Things to remember ...

- Persian script is more rounded and curvaceous, compared with Arabic writing, which can look somewhat jagged. Don't forget to put in the dots of the letters that need one, two or three dots. It is very common for beginners to forget the dots of the Persian letters.
- In words that are made up of several letters, which can be joined up, try writing the whole sequence without taking your pen off the paper, rather than writing each letter individually. This will go some way in making your handwriting look nice and closer to a native hand.
- A huge number of Persian words end with the sound 'e' as in 'café'. In writing, this sound is transcribed using the attached or stand-alone form of the penultimate letter of the alphabet 'h' 'ه' or 'ه'. Therefore 'khāne' 'house' is written as خانه in Persian or 'setāre' 'star' is written as ستاره.
- There is no gender in Persian so the context alone distinguishes between 'he' and 'she'.

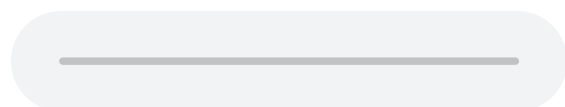
.....

Greetings and meeting people

In this unit you will learn how to

- *Greet people*
- *Say goodbye and goodnight*
- *Say 'thank you', 'you're welcome' and 'please'*
- *Say the days of the week and seasons*

Listen to the following informal and formal ways of saying 'hello' and 'goodbye'.



Unit 1, Dialogue 1 (1:04)

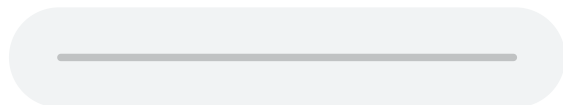
hello, dear Maryam	<i>salām maryam jān!</i>	سَلَام مَرِيْم جَان!
hello, darling	<i>salām 'azizam</i>	سَلَام عَزِيْزَم
good morning, Babak	<i>sobh be-kheyr bābak</i>	صَبْح بِخَيْر بَابَك
good day, madam	<i>ruz be-kheyr khānom</i>	رُوز بِخَيْر خَانَم
goodbye, Mrs Farhadi	<i>khodā-hāfez khānom farhādi</i>	خُداحافِظْ خَانَم فَرهَادِي
goodbye, till tomorrow	<i>khodā-hāfez tā fardā</i>	خُداحافِظْ، تا فَرْدَا
goodnight, my son	<i>shab be-kheyr pesaram</i>	شَب بِخَيْر پَسَرَم
goodnight, (dear) mum	<i>shab be-kheyr māmān jān</i>	شَب بِخَيْر مَامَان جَان
goodbye, children	<i>khodā-hāfez bache-hā</i>	خُداحافِظْ بچهها
farewell, safe journey	<i>khodā negahdār, safar be-kheyr</i>	خُدا نَگِهْدَار، سَفَر بِخَيْر

Learning a few basic, polite phrases in Persian could not be easier and it will earn you a lot of Brownie points.

Insight

The greeting *salām*, سلام 'hello', lit. *peace*, can be used at any time of day or night and if necessary can be followed by a more time-specific greeting.

'Yes' and 'no'; 'hello' and 'goodbye'



Unit 1, Dialogue 2 (1:26)

Try out these phrases on your own and then listen to the audio:

بَلِه	<i>bale</i>	yes (formal)
آرِه	<i>āre</i>	yup, yes (informal)
نَه	<i>na</i>	no (informal)
نَخِير	<i>nakheyr</i>	no (formal)
سَلَام	<i>salām</i>	hello, hi! (can be used any time of day or night)
دُرود	<i>dorud</i>	hi! greetings!
صَبْحِ بَخِير	<i>sobh-bekheyr</i>	good morning
رُوزِ بَخِير	<i>ruz-bekheyr</i>	good day (formal or on TV and radio)
عَصْرِ بَخِير	<i>'asr-bekheyr</i>	good afternoon (used in formal settings)
شَبِ بَخِير	<i>shab-bekheyr</i>	goodnight (when it's time to leave or bedtime)
سَفَرِ بَخِير	<i>safar-bekheyr</i>	safe journey (bon voyage)
خُدَا حَافِظ	<i>khodā-hāfez</i>	goodbye, farewell
خُدَانِگَهْدَار	<i>khodā-negahdār</i>	goodbye (God keep you safe)
تَا فَرْدَا	<i>tā fardā</i>	till tomorrow (informal)
مِی بِنِیْمَت	<i>mibinamet</i>	see you (informal, addressed to one person)

Always listen out for other native speakers greeting you first. You can then just imitate them. If you know a person's name you should use it or otherwise prefix your greeting by 'mister' or 'madam' on more formal occasions:

سَلَام مَرِیْم.	<i>salām Maryam</i>	Hello, Maryam.
سَلَام. صَبْحِ بَخِير پَرَوِیز.	<i>salām, sobh-bekheyr parviz</i>	Hi! Good morning, Parviz.
عَصْرِ بَخِير آقَا.	<i>'asr-bekheyr āqā</i>	Good afternoon, sir. (addressed to a man you do not know)
شَبِ بَخِير عَزِیْزِم.	<i>shab-bekheyr 'azizam</i>	Good night, my dear.
خُدَا حَافِظِ خَانَم.	<i>khodāhāfez khānom</i>	Goodbye, madam. (Miss or Mrs)
خُدَانِگَهْدَارِ خَانَمِ سَلِیْمِی.	<i>khodā-negahdār khānom-e Salimi</i>	Goodbye, Mrs Salimi.

By now you may have worked out that the phrase **بَخِير** *bekheyr* means 'good, well or pleasant' as in 'good morning' or 'good journey'.

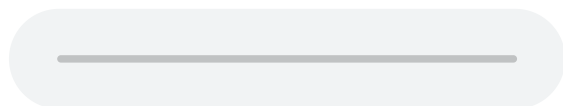
Insight

The huge number of greeting-terms in Persian are a direct illustration of the emphasis the culture places on observing rituals of formality and showing and receiving respect. No other language, to my knowledge, has so many different ways of asking after other people's state of being, wishing them good health or bidding them farewell or safe journeys. It is important for learners to learn a few useful ways of saying hello, goodbye, please and thank you, and not be alarmed at the amount of time given by Persian native speakers to these ritualized social exchanges.

Exercise 1

How would you greet a female shopkeeper in the morning; neighbour's little boy Ahmad; your friend's grandfather in the afternoon? Say 'goodbye' to Maryam; 'goodnight' to Babak, 'safe journey' to Mr Shams.

Listen to the following semi-formal exchange of niceties:



Unit 1, Exercise 1 (1:00)

Hello sir, good morning.	<i>salām aqā, sobh-bekheyr.</i>	سلام آقا، صبح بخیر.
Hello madam, may I help you?	<i>salām khānom, befarmāid.</i>	سلام خانم، بفرمایید.
Thank you, a coffee with milk, please.	<i>motshakeram, lotfan yek qahve bā shir.</i>	مُتَشکِرَم، لُطفاً یک قَهوه با شیر.
Here you are, coffee with milk and sugar. Anything else?	<i>befarmāid, qahve bā shir va shekar, digar amry nist?</i>	بفرمایید، قَهوه با شیر و شکر. دیگر امری نیست؟
No thanks; thank you very much.	<i>na mersi aqā, kheyli mamnun.</i>	نه مرسی آقا، خیلی ممنون.
You are welcome.	<i>khāhesh mikonam.</i>	خواهش می کنم.
Goodbye.	<i>khodā-hāfez.</i>	خداحافظ.
You're welcome (i.e. nice to have had you in the shop), goodbye.	<i>khosh āmadid khānom, khodā negahdār.</i>	خوش آمدید خانم، خدانگهدار.

As explained in the introduction, Persian places a lot of emphasis on self-deprecation and humility. There are endless words and phrases in Persian for saying 'please' and 'thank you' to show various degrees of appreciation. Here are a few common examples:

خواهش می کنم *khāhesh-mikonam* please (lit. I request from you)

بی زحمت *bi-zahmat* please (if it's no trouble)

لُطفاً *lotfan* please (if you'd be so kind)

Unit 1, Exercise 1b (1:40)

In Persian as in English or French (*pardon*), the same word for 'sorry' or 'excuse me' can be used to apologize or to seek information. The changing of the stress changes the meaning. Listen to the audio:

ببخشید! *bebakhshid* excuse me (if you want to ask a question, get someone's attention, get through or to say sorry; lit. forgive me)

ببخشید؟ *bebakhshid* sorry?, excuse me? (if you want someone to repeat what they have just said)

Another similar expression:

مَعذِرَتِ مِی خَوَاهَم! *ma'zerat mi-khāham* sorry (lit. I beg your pardon)

مَعذِرَتِ مِی خَوَاهَم؟ *ma'zerat mi-khāham* pardon?

And another:

بفرمایید *befarmāid*, a word that you will hear a lot in a Persian conversation, can mean 'here you are', 'please help yourself', 'what can I do for you' and 'what would you like to order' as in a restaurant, for example.

Insight

Intonation and stress positions in Persian can make a word that is usually a compliment sound like an insult or vice versa. That's why you should pay close attention to the tone used by native speakers or in the audio.

There are endless ways of saying 'thank you' in Persian. Here are some of the common and less idiomatic expressions:

مُتَشَكِّرِم *motshakram* thank you (lit. I'm grateful)

مَمْنُون *mamnun* thanks!

سپاسگزارم *sepās-gozāram* I'm grateful

مِرْسِی! *merci!* Thanks! (originally French but commonly used in cities in Iran)

Persian uses two different words to express *welcome*, as in 'welcome to the city' and as in 'you're welcome' in reply to 'thank you'. In the latter case, a number of different words and expressions can be used:

خوش آمدید! *khosh āmadid* Welcome. (to our house, for example)

خواهش می‌کنم. *khāhesh-mikonam* Welcome. ('you're welcome' in response to 'thank you')

You may have noticed that خواهش می‌کنم *khāhesh-mikonam* is exactly the same as the word used for 'please' (see earlier). This is because in response to gratitude a Persian speaker should show humility and imply 'please don't even mention it'. Therefore, in Persian 'please' = 'you're welcome' =

خواهش می‌کنم *khāhesh-mikonam*.

Two more useful expressions:

حتماً *hatman* sure, definitely

باشد *bāshad* (*bāshe* informally) OK, all right

Insight

Some languages have specific terms of endearment, appearing in the form of suffixes that are put on a name. Japanese, for example, has a large number of these terms such as the suffixes *-chan* or *-san*. Persian has one very common, everyday suffix of endearment: ‘jān’, جان, that is put after the names of close friends and relations, e.g. ‘Maryam jān’, lit. ‘Maryam my soul’, or ‘Dāriush jān’. ‘jān’, meaning life-essence or soul, goes with names that are more than one syllable long but sounds odd if used with one-syllable names. Therefore you can say ‘Thomas jān’ or ‘Katie jān’ but it sounds odd to say ‘Tom jān’ or ‘Kate jān’! You’ll see the word ‘jān’ used in many dialogues in this book.

Exercise 2

(a) Translate the following into Persian:

- 1 Good morning Mehri, welcome!
- 2 Yes please, tea if you don’t mind.
- 3 I am sorry, Babak.
- 4 No thank you, Pari.
- 5 Safe journey, Reza and thank you.
Don’t mention it

(b) Translate into English:

- ۱ سلام آقا، بفرمایید.
 - ۲ لطفای چای وی شیرینی دانمارکی.
 - ۳ ببخشید خانم، خیلی معذرت می خواهم.
 - ۴ نه مرسی باب جان.
 - ۵ خواهش می کنم، خدانگهدار.
-

Days of the week, months and seasons

Don't despair if you find the endless expressions of greetings and showing gratitude in Persian confusing. Let's try learning some other useful and relatively easy vocabulary: days of the week in Persian.

Days of the week

Unit 1, Dialogue 3 (1:08)

The Persian names of the days of the week are very easy to remember.

The Persian week or **هفته** *hafte* (lit. of seven) begins on Saturday, **شنبه** *shanbe*, the ancient Sabbath. Thereafter, the following days are identified by numbers one to five added to the word **شنبه** *shanbe*, with the exception of Friday, which has its Arabic name to denote the day of communal prayers i.e. **جمعه** *jom'e*.

Listen to the name of the days of the week:

Saturday (1st day of the week)	شنبه	<i>shambe</i>
Sunday (one day after Saturday)	یکشنبه	<i>yekshambe</i>
Monday (two days after ...)	دوشنبه	<i>doshambe</i>
Tuesday (three days after ...)	سه شنبه	<i>seshambe</i>
Wednesday (four days after ...)	چهارشنبه	<i>chahārshambe</i>
Thursday (five days after ...)	پنجشنبه	<i>panjshambe</i>
Friday	جمعه	<i>jom'e</i>

The weekend in Iran is Thursday and Friday; **پنجشنبه و جمعه**.

You will have noticed that the word **شنبه** *shanbe* is pronounced as *shambe*, with an 'm' instead of an 'n'. This is because when an 'n' precedes a 'b' it is pronounced as an 'm'.

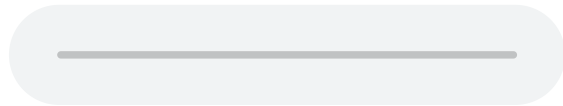
Some pocket diaries and calendars carry the Persian name for Friday too which is **آدینه** *adine*. However, the use of this noun in everyday or informal conversation and writing is very rare.

The Persian calendar

The everyday Persian calendar is based on the solar calculation of the Muslim era. This means that although the Persian calendar goes back a very long time, the starting point of the current calendar is the morning after the flight of Mohammed, the prophet of Islam, from Mecca to Medina (in Saudi Arabia) on 16 July 622 CE. The Persian months and the start of the New Year, however, are still based on the pre-Islamic Persian traditions.

The Iranian New Year, celebrated by Persians, Afghans, Tajikis, Kurds, Parsis of the Asian subcontinent and many more, falls at the beginning of the vernal equinox which coincides with 20 or 21 March. The first day of the New Year is on the first of the month of farvardin, the first month of the Iranian year. The Royal Observatory at Greenwich is a very good source of when the earth passes through the four equinoxes and the website can give you the precise time when the Iranian New Year begins!

The months



Unit 1, Dialogue 4 (2:02)

The names of the Persian months can be quite a mouthful as they are mostly the names of Zoroastrian archangels. It is quite interesting that the Persian months correspond exactly to the signs of the zodiac. For example, if you are born on 18 June, then your birthday, according to the arrangement of the Persian months, will be on 28 *khordād*, which is the 28th day of the sign of Gemini.

The names of the 12 Persian months and the corresponding zodiac signs follow. They are quite a mouthful to pronounce. Listen to the name of the months and follow the script as they are being read:

فَروردین	<i>farvardin</i>	Aries	starts 21 March
اُردیبهشت	<i>ordibehesht</i>	Taurus	starts 21 April
خُرداد	<i>khordād</i>	Gemini	starts 22 May
تیر	<i>tir</i>	Cancer	starts 22 June
مُرداد	<i>mordād</i>	Leo	starts 23 July
شهریور	<i>shahrivar</i>	Virgo	starts 23 August
مهر	<i>mehr</i>	Libra	starts 23 September
آبان	<i>ābān</i>	Scorpio	starts 23 October
آذر	<i>āzar</i>	Sagittarius	starts 22 November
دی	<i>dey</i>	Capricorn	starts 22 December
بَهمن	<i>bahman</i>	Aquarius	starts 21 January
اسفند	<i>esfand</i>	Pisces	starts 20 February

The first six months of the Persian year have 31 days each, the next five have 30 days each and *esfand*, the last month of the year, is 29 days long.

However, every fourth year, in a leap year, known as *kabise*, کبیسه, *esfand* also is 30 days long.

All public institutions and almost all daily newspapers note the Persian, Muslim and the Christian calendars. In this way, religious festivals and important anniversaries can be observed and the business and academic community can keep up with dates used in the West.

The seasons

Unit 1, Dialogue 5 (0:37)

The four seasons in Persian are:

بهار	<i>bahār</i>	spring
تابستان	<i>tābestān</i>	summer
پاییز	<i>pā'eez</i>	autumn
زمستان	<i>zemestān</i>	winter

Exercise 3

1 Put the following in the correct order:

۱ پنجشنبه، یکشنبه، جمعه، سه شنبه

۲ زمستان، تابستان، بهار

2 What are the last two Persian months of autumn?

3 What are the Persian summer months?

4 What Persian months correspond to 14 April, 21 July, 8 January and 30 October?

5 How many days are there in the Persian summer months?

Things to remember ...

- Persian has a lot of complimentary responses that are features of its very complex socio-cultural system of communication. For example as well as the straightforward 'thank you' and 'please' you can use 'may your hands not hurt' (*daste shomā dard nakonad* دست شما درد نکند) instead of 'thank you' and the response to this would be 'may your head never ache' (*sar-e shomā dard nakonad* سر شما درد نکند).
- Politeness with regard to people's status, whether male or female, close friend and relative or more distant and formal, is flexible in Persian. Terms such as Mr, Miss and Mrs can be used both with first names and surnames and, unlike in English, you can call your friends and close relations 'Mr' or 'Mrs', such as *Maryam khānom*, lit. 'Miss' or 'Mrs Maryam', or Hasan Agha, lit. 'Mr Hasan'. In a formal setting 'Mr' and 'Mrs' precedes the surname as in *Khānom-e Salimi*, 'Mrs Salimi', or *Aghā-ye Rastegār*, 'Mr Rastegār'.
- The Persian week starts on a Saturday, *shambe*, the old Sabbath, and the days of the weekend are Thursday and Friday. To learn your days of the week learn the numbers 1 to 5 in Persian. Friday is the day of 'assembly', coming together for ritual worship, and has its own name: *Jom'eh*, or a Persian name used less commonly, *Ādineh*.
- The Persian calendar is solar and is organized according to the timings of equinoxes and solstices in the northern hemisphere. Every New Year starts when the earth moves through the vernal equinox at a precisely measured time. This is usually on 20th or 21st of March.
- Persian months run in perfect tandem with the months of the Zodiac. The first month of the year is *Farvardin* and corresponds to Aries and the last is *Esfand* which is exactly in parallel with Pisces.
- Iranian media, academic institutions, the commercial sector and Persian newspapers use the Gregorian and Islamic calendars, too, but the Persian calendar is the calendar that is used most widely.

Can you answer these questions? They have all been covered in this unit.

- 1** What is the most common greeting in Persian?
- 2** How do you greet someone in the morning?
- 3** What is the formal 'yes' in Persian?
- 4** How do you address a woman you have just met?
- 5** Is there any difference in phrases for 'please' and 'you are welcome'?
- 6** What is the most common soubriquet or term of endearment used with names in Persian? How would you say 'dear Isabel'?
- 7** What is the first day of the Persian week?
- 8** What's the significance of Vernal Equinox for Iranians?
- 9** What is your birth sign if you are born on the 16th of the Persian month of Ābān?
- 10** Can you work out your Persian birthday if you were born on 5th May 1968?

2



Numbers

In this unit you will learn how to

- Use and write cardinal and ordinal numbers and qualifying nouns
 - Form plurals
 - Use 'this', 'that', 'these' and 'those'
-

Persian numbers

Unit 2, Dialogue 1 (3:35)

Persian uses Arabic numerals and these are written numerically from left to right (in the opposite direction to the script). The following are the cardinal numbers from 1 to 20. Listen to how they are pronounced:

یک *yek* ۱ 1

سه *se* ۳ 3

پنج *panj* ۵ 5

هفت *haft* ۷ 7

نه *noh* ۹ 9

یازده *yāzdah* ۱۱ 11

سیزده *sizdah* ۱۳ 13

پانزده *pānzdah* ۱۵ 15

هفده *hivdah* ۱۷ 17

نوزده *nuzdah* ۱۹ 19

دو *do* ۲ 2

چهار *chahār* ۴ 4

شش *shesh* ۶ 6

هشت *hasht* ۸ 8

ده *dah* ۱۰ 10

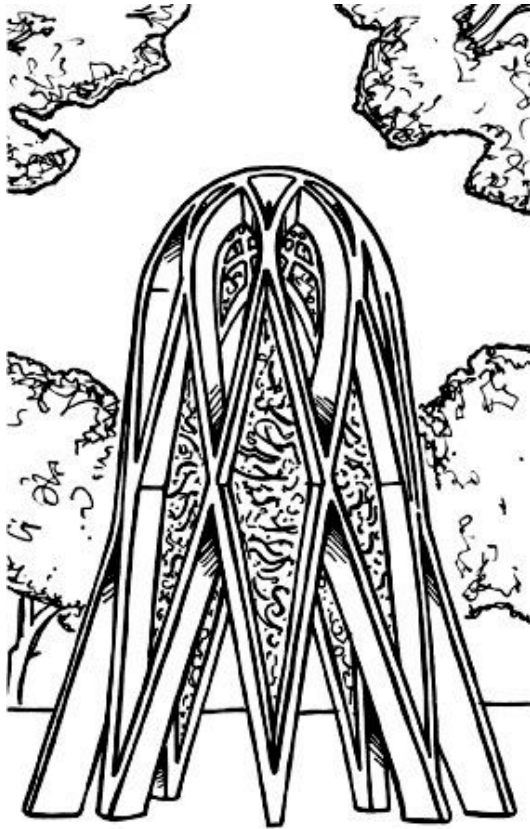
دوازده *davāzdah* ۱۲ 12

چهارده *chahārdah* ۱۴ 14

شانزده *shānzdah* ۱۶ 16

هجده *hizhdah* ۱۸ 18

بیست *bist* ۲۰ 20



Mausoleum of Omar Khayyam, north-east Iran

'Zero' is **صفر** *sefr* (۰) in Persian.

In numbers greater than 20, the different elements follow each other as they do in English with the larger number coming first; in pronunciation they are joined together by the sound *-o*, meaning 'and'. So, for example, 21 (۲۱) is:

بیست و یک *bist-o yek*.

Similarly 136 (۱۳۶) is:

صد و سی و شش

sad-o si-yo shesh

2,574 (۲۵۷۴) is:

دو هزار و پانصد و هفتاد و چهار

do hezār-o pānsad-o haftād-ochahār.

Bear in mind that there are irregularities and differences in the way some numbers are written and pronounced. For example, 17 and 18 are not pronounced as they are written. Seventeen (۱۷), is written as

هفده *hefdah*, but is pronounced as *hivdah*; similarly, 18 (۱۸) is written as **هجده** *hejdah* but pronounced as *hizhdah*.

The tens of numbers have some element of the unit in them but are, on the whole, irregular.

The round units of ten, from 20 to 90, are:

بیست <i>bist</i> ۲۰ 20	سی <i>si</i> ۳۰ 30
چهل <i>chehel</i> ۴۰ 40	پنجاه <i>panjāh</i> ۵۰ 50
شصت <i>shast</i> ۶۰ 60	هفتاد <i>haftād</i> ۷۰ 70
هشتاد <i>hashtād</i> ۸۰ 80	نود <i>navad</i> ۹۰ 90

Formation of the hundreds is almost regular, with the exception of 100, 200, 300 and 500. Again, you will spot the presence of the unit number in the two, three and five hundred. Listen to the audio as these numbers are read out:

صد <i>sad</i> ۱۰۰ 100	دویست <i>devist</i> ۲۰۰ 200
سیصد <i>sisad</i> ۳۰۰ 300	چهارصد <i>chahārsad</i> ۴۰۰ 400
پانصد <i>pānsad</i> ۵۰۰ 500	ششصد <i>sheshsad</i> ۶۰۰ 600
هفتصد <i>haftsad</i> ۷۰۰ 700	هشتصد <i>hashtsad</i> ۸۰۰ 800
نُهصد <i>nohsad</i> ۹۰۰ 900	

There are *no* irregularities in forming the thousands:

یکهزار or هزار <i>hezār</i> or <i>yek-hezār</i>	۱۰۰۰ 1,000
دوهزار <i>dohezār</i>	۲۰۰۰ 2,000
پنج هزار <i>panj-hezār</i>	۵۰۰۰ 5,000
ده هزار <i>dah-hezār</i>	۱۰۰۰۰ 10,000
سی و هفت هزار <i>si-yo haft-hezār</i>	۳۷۰۰۰ 37,000 and so on

The cardinal numbers always come *before* the noun, object or the person that is counted, which is similar to English:

دو روز *do ruz* two days

سه کتاب *se ketāb* three books
بیست و پنج مسافر *bist-o panj mosāfer* 25 passengers

Remember that quantified nouns always stay in the singular in Persian. This means that, unlike in English, nouns in Persian stay in the singular after numbers.

Exercise 1

1 Write the following numbers in Persian in digits: 6, 12, 25, 34, 7, 0, 107, 358, 819, 48, 987, 1046, 26, 903.

2 Write these numbers in words in Persian:

forty-two, eleven, eight, thirteen, forty, sixty-nine, one hundred and fifty-one, two hundred, one thousand six hundred and twenty-five.

Unit 2, Exercise 1 (0:38)

3 Say these numbers out loud in Persian, and write them in English:

۷ - ۱۲ - ۲۳ - ۱۹۸ - ۵۹۱ - ۱۸۳ - ۹۲۱۲.

4 Translate into Persian: three books, one boy, eight cars, two men, 14 days.

Insight

Persian numbers originate from Hindu–Arabic numeral systems, developed by Indian mathematicians and then adopted by the Persian mathematician Khawrazmi in 825 CE. After further modification by Arab mathematicians these numbers spread to the western world in the 11th and 12th centuries. You can see, for example, that if you rotate the Persian number ۳ by 90° anti-clockwise, you will arrive at the European, ‘Arabic’ number 3. The following table shows the Arabic and Persian numbers:

Western Arabic numbers	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Persian numbers	۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶	۷	۸	۹
Arabic numbers	۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶	۷	۸	۹

Counting words or qualifying nouns

One major difference between Persian and English is that usually a singular, sometimes idiomatic, qualifying word is inserted between the number and the counted noun. Depending on the reference book you choose, these qualifiers are also known as ‘counting words’, ‘classifiers’, ‘numerative words’ or ‘counters’. These qualifiers are rarely used in English but to give you the idea, consider these examples:

300 *head* of Jersey cattle
four *items* of clothing
three *batches* of loaves
two *rounds* of golf
two *dozen* eggs
four *pairs* of shoes
ten *volumes* of poetry

The words *head*, *items*, *batches*, *rounds*, *dozen*, *pairs*, and *volumes* typically precede a certain type of noun.

The following may also help to explain the point further, although the words *shoal*, *herd* and *flock* are ‘collective nouns’ in English and usually refer to large numbers of the following noun:

a *school* or *shoal* of fish
a *herd* of cattle
a *flock* of geese

Persian has many more qualifying words than English and uses them a lot more extensively. Indeed, to an Iranian, it feels odd to hear a singular noun linked to a number without the buffer of some qualifying word.

Many South Asian languages have these classifiers that must come after cardinal numbers, to the extent that some Tibeto-Burman languages have many classifiers used for round things, metal things, animals and birds, etc. In comparison with these languages, Persian has fewer classifiers for you to learn, you'll be pleased to know!

The most common of the Persian qualifying nouns is **تا** *tā*, roughly translated as *item* and it can accompany almost any counted noun (but has to be more than one) with the exception of expressions of time. Units of time such as hour, minute, day, month, etc. already act as specific qualified nouns.

تا *tā* is the most widely used classifier of nouns in the spoken language:

سه تا خاله *se tā khāle* three aunts (maternal)
ده تا کلاه *dah tā kolāh* ten hats
پنج تا کتاب *panj tā ketāb* five books
دو تا خانم *do tā khānom* two ladies
صد تا دانشجو *sad tā dāneshju* 100 students

Note: Remember that you *cannot* say **یک تا کتاب** *yek tā ketāb* 'one book'. **تا** *tā* *must* follow numbers of two or more.

Other common qualifying words

The other most common qualifying or classifying words in Persian are:

نَفر *nafar* person (used for living beings)
دانه *dāne* grain, seed (used for 'things', i.e. concrete but small objects varying from one grape to an emerald; it is occasionally used in the colloquial for cars or houses to denote the rather small or insignificant size)
عدد *adad* item, number (used mainly for small objects)
جلد *jeld* volume, copy (used mainly for books)
دست *dast* lit. hand, can mean 'set' too (used for clothes as in 'a suit'; also 'suite' for furniture)
جُفت *joft* pair

All units of weights and measures, such as **متر** *metr* 'metre', **کیلو** *kilu* 'kilogram', **لیتر** *litr* 'litre' are used as qualifying words. Note that the French pronunciation of these metric units is used in Persian:

سه متر پارچه ابریشمی *se metr pārchē-ye abrishami* three metres of silk cloth

دو لیتر شیر کم چربی *do litr shir-e kam charbi* two litres of low-fat milk

یک کیلو و نیم گوشت چرخ کرده *yek kilo o nim gusht-e charkh karde* one kilo and a half (lit.) minced meat

Word order of numbers and nouns

The cardinal number precedes the singular noun that it refers to. If, as is mostly the case, a qualifying or classifying noun is also used then the word order is as follows: number *followed* by qualifying word, *followed* by the noun in its singular:

چهار نفر ایرانی *chahār nafar irāni* four Iranians (lit. four 'persons Iranian')

پنج جفت کفش *panj joft kafsh* five pairs of shoes

یک دانه سیب و دو تا موز *yek dāne sib va do tā mowz* one (seed/item) apple and two (item) bananas

ده روز تعطیل *dah ruz ta'til* ten days holiday or break

Ordinals

Unit 2, Dialogue 2 (0:52)

Ordinal numbers in Persian are generally formed by the addition of the suffix **م** *-om*, to the cardinal number. In English, the ordinals are made by adding *-st*, *-nd* or *-rd* to the first three numbers and to their compounds

thereafter, e.g. 21st, 22nd, 23rd, and by adding *-th* to the subsequent numbers, e.g. fifth, tenth, 20th, 126th.

Although the suffix *-om* is added to *all* cardinals, the first three ordinals in Persian are slightly irregular. This is because the Arabic word **أَوَّل** *avval* ‘first’ is much more commonly used in Persian than the equivalent

Iranian word **يَكُم** *yekom*.

The Iranian **يَكُم** *yekom* is, however, used in all the compounds, such as **بِیست و یکم** *bist-o yekom* 21st or **سیصد و هفتاد و یکم** *sisad-o haftād-o yekom* 371st.

Moreover, the subsequent numbers **دو** *do* ‘two’ and **سه** *se* ‘three’ in Persian end in the short vowels ‘o’ and ‘e’. Therefore, we have to compensate for the two short vowels (one at the end of the numeral and the other at the beginning of the suffix *-om*) coming together by the addition of a ‘v’ between the vowels ‘o’ and ‘e’:

دووم = **دو** + **م** *do + om* = (not *do-om* but) *dovom* second

سِووم = **سه** + **م** *se + om* = (not *se-om* but) *sevom* third

Hence the change of ‘o’ and ‘e’ to ‘v’.

This formation will be carried through the compounds as well, such as:

بِیست و سِووم *bist-o sevom* 23rd

چهل و دووم *chehel-o dovom* 42nd

صد و شصت و سِووم *sad-o shast-o sevom* 163rd

Look at the following comparison table:

Cardinal	Ordinal
1 یک <i>yek</i>	(يَكُم <i>yekom</i>) أَوَّل <i>avval</i> much more common
2 دو <i>do</i>	دووم <i>dovom</i>
3 سه <i>se</i>	سِووم <i>sevom</i>

The ordinals after the first three, however, are very regular, as they are in English. So, in English the ordinals of numbers from four to 100,000 and beyond, with the exception of any compound number ending in one,

two or three, are formed by the addition of *th*. In Persian, too, the ordinals of all numbers from چهار ۴ (four) upwards are formed by the addition of -om to the last element of number (see following table of comparison).

Cardinal	Ordinal
4 چهار چاهār	چهارم چahārom
5 پنج panj	پنجم panjom
20 بیست bist	بیستم bistom
21 بیست یک bist-o yek	بیست یکم bist-o yekom
27 بیست و هفت bist-o haft	بیست و هفتم bist-o haftom
100 صد sad	صدم sadom
1,000 هزار hezār	هزارم hezārom

and so on throughout the number system.

Insight

Persian zero looks just like a dot (۰). The decimal point is shown by a slash sign (/). 35.72 is therefore written as ۳۵/۷۲. Persian uses ‘million’ for ‘million’ but the French ‘milliārd’ for ‘billion’.

Summary

1 In case of compound numbers ending with the numeral ‘one’ such as 231 for example, the suffix *-om* of *yekom* is attached to the end of the entire group and *not avval*. Therefore, the Persian equivalent of 231st, for example, will be:

دویست و سی و یکم *devist-o si-yo yekom*

2 The Persian ordinal of compound numbers ending in two or three will have the same irregular suffixes of *-vom* for ‘second’ and ‘third’, e.g. 52nd will be پنجاه و دوم *panjā h-o dovom*

and 63rd will be شصت و سوم *shast-o sevvom*.

3 Ordinal numbers behave as adverb–adjectives. As adjectives they will follow the noun as in:

هفته چهارم *hafteh-ye chahārom* the fourth week

اتوبوس سوم *otobus-e sevvom* the third bus

فیلم اول *film-e avval* the first film

Insight

Persian uses a large number of ‘counting-words’ or qualifying nouns such as ‘*tā*’, or ‘*nafar*’, etc. These are similar to the more specific English counting words such as ‘loaves’ or ‘head’ or ‘round’ or ‘rasher’. The counting words follow the number and come before the noun. The universal counting word is ‘*tā*’ and is used with number 2 and above.

Exercise 2

Unit 2, Exercise 2 (1:07)

- 1 Write these numbers in Persian, and say the ordinal and cardinal forms: 2, 6, 10, 11, 23, 41, 125, 94.
- 2 Translate into English:

چهارم - بیست و ششم - شب سوم - هزارم - یازدهم فروردین،
اول خرداد، سی و یکم

Plurals

Unit 2, Dialogue 3 (1:39)

Listen to the audio where the nouns ‘book’ کتاب *ketāb* and ‘boy’ پسر *pesar* are used, first in the singular, then quantified with numbers, in combination with ‘this’ and ‘that’ and, finally, in the plural:

book	<i>ketāb</i>	کتاب
two book(s)	<i>do ketāb</i>	دو کتاب
five book(s)	<i>panj ketāb</i>	پنج کتاب
five (items of) book(s)	<i>panj tā ketāb</i>	پنج تا کتاب
those (lit. that) five book(s)	<i>ān panj ketāb</i>	آن پنج کتاب
these (lit. this) two book(s)	<i>in do ketāb</i>	این دو کتاب
books	<i>ketāb-hā</i>	کتاب ها
these (lit. this) books	<i>in ketāb-hā</i>	این کتاب ها
boy	<i>pesar</i>	پسر
one boy	<i>yek pesar</i>	یک پسر
two boy(s)	<i>do pesar</i>	دو پسر
two (numbers of) boy(s)	<i>do tā pesar</i>	دو تا پسر
that boy	<i>ān pesar</i>	آن پسر
those (lit. that) boys	<i>ān pesar-hā</i>	آن پسر ها
these (lit. this) two boy(s)	<i>in do pesar</i>	این دو پسر

Insight

Demonstratives ‘this’ and ‘that’ also remain singular if accompanied by numbers and/or plural nouns as in ‘this two girl’ or ‘that boys’.

Forming the plural

There are several ways of making plurals in Persian.

1 The most common way is by adding a **ها** *hā* to the end of a noun. This is almost the equivalent of adding an ‘s’ to English nouns to form the plural and is most commonly used with non-living, inanimate things:

کتاب book + ها = کتابها or کتابها books

گل flower + ها = گلها or گلها flowers

خانه house + ها = خانهها houses

Insight

Numbers and plurals must never be used together in Modern Persian. Therefore you'll never have 6 cats but rather 6 cat or 24 student or one thousand bird.

2 By adding the plural ending **ان** *ān*. However, the plural ending **ان** is only ever used for animate beings (including the nouns for growing things such as trees or herbs) or nouns and adjectives referring to living things and is more commonly found in the written language. Wherever possible, the ending **ان** is joined to the word:

دوست friend + **ان** = دوستان friends

پدر father + **ان** = پدران fathers

مرد man + **ان** = مردان man

کودک child + **ان** = کودکان children

دختر girl/daughter + **ان** = دختران girls, daughters

Other uses of **ان** *ān* plural ending

1 In the written language, particularly in a literary text, the plural ending **ان** *ān* can also be used for some animals:

سگ *sag* dog → سگان *sagān* dogs

اسب *asb* horse → اسبان *asbān* horses

مرغ *morgh* bird → مرغان *morghān* birds

شیر *shir* lion → شیران *shirān* lions

2 When adjectives such as ‘good’, ‘young’, ‘great’, ‘bad’, etc., are used in written, literary language to refer to a group of people such as ‘the good’ or ‘the young’ the plural ending **ان** *ān* is used:

خوب *khub* good → **خوبان** *khubān* the good

جوان *javān* young → **جوانان** *javānān* the youth

بزرگ *bozorg* great → **بزرگان** *bozorgān* the great

بد *bad* bad → **بدان** *badān* the bad

Note: These adjectives in the plural never follow nouns; rather they are used *as nouns*.

In the examples just given, when the adjectives qualifying human beings end in the two long vowels *ā* and *u*, the plural ending becomes a **یان** *yān*, instead of **ان** *ān*.

دانا *dānā* wise → **دانایان** *dānāyān* wise ones, the wise

نابینا *nābinā* blind → **نابینایان** *nābināyān* blind ones, the blind

سخنگو *sokhangū* spokesperson, speaker → **سخنگویان** *sokhanguyān* the speakers

ماجراجو *mājerāju* adventurer → **ماجراجویان** *mājerājuyān* the adventurers

Similarly, when nouns or adjectives attributable to living things end in the short vowel *e*, indicated by the sign **ه / هـ** the plural ending changes to **گان** *gān* and the final vowel sign of **ه / هـ** is dropped:

بچه *bache* child, childish → **بچهگان** *bachegān* children or childish ones.

گرسنه *gorosne* hungry → **گرسنگان** *gorosnegān* the hungry ones

درنده *darande* savage → **درندگان** *darandegān* the savage ones

ستاره *setāre* star → **ستارگان** *setāregān* the stars

Insight

The equivalent of the universal English plural 's' in Persian is 'hā' added to any noun to make its plural, but there are other more specific plurals too, such as 'ān' used only for living, animate things.

Plural of units of time and place

The plural of units of time and adverbs of place are always made with **ها** *hā*.

Time

روز *ruz* day → روزها *ruzhā* days

شب *shab* night → شبها *shabhā* nights

هفته *hafte* week → هفته ها *haftehā* weeks

ماه *māh* month → ماه ها *māh-hā* months

سال *sāl* year → سالها *sālhā* years

ساعت *sā'at* hour → ساعتها *sā'athā* hours

Place

کشور *keshvar* country → کشورها *keshvarhā* countries

جنگل *jangal* forest → جنگلها *jangalhā* forests

شهر *shahr* city, town → شهرها *shahrhā* cities, towns

Other plurals

In addition to the methods just explained, other ways of forming the plural exist in Persian that deal almost exclusively with forming the plurals of Arabic words in Persian. These range from ‘feminine plurals’ to ‘duals’ and the broken plurals.

It is not necessary at this stage in the book to spend time on formation of these plurals.

Note: In Persian, a quantified noun, i.e. a noun accompanied by a number, *never* takes the plural. This means that, for example, the moment you specify *how many* books, apples or tourists you are referring to, you use the *singular noun*. Remember, numbers are always followed by nouns in the singular, not in the plural.

one book یک کتاب

books کتاب ها

two books دو کتاب lit. two book and *not* دو کتاب ها

thousand books هزار کتاب

ten boys ده پسر

Exercise 3

1 Put the following words into the plural:

خواهر ماشین پسر کتابخانه پنجره روز استاد زن

2 Translate the following plurals into Persian: cities, boys, flowers, cats, women, days, summers, pens, trains, the young, the wise, three sisters, ten birds, two hours.

Things to remember ...

- Persian numbers are written from left to right, in the opposite direction of the script.
- Combinations of numbers are formed very logically and in pronunciation the numbers are linked by the vowel ‘o’, short for ‘and’. Therefore 451 is ۴۵۱, ‘chāhār sad o panjāh o yek’, lit. four-hundred and fifty and one.
- Ordinals are formed by adding ‘-om’ to cardinal numbers but not to number 1 (yek). The ordinal of one (i.e. first) is the Arabic ‘avval’ but in combined numbers such as 21st ‘yekom’ can be used (bist o yekom 21).

Answer these questions based on material from this unit.

- 1** Can you count from 1 to 10 in Persian?
- 2** Write down the number 51 using Persian numerals.
- 3** Can you name a central Asian capital city with the Persian number two in it?
- 4** Are combined Persian numbers written from right to left?
- 5** What is the most common 'counting word' in Persian?
- 6** How would you say 'four brothers'? Don't forget to use your counting word.
- 7** What plural endings can you use for the noun 'boy'?
- 8** How would say 'twelfth' in Persian?
- 9** Imagine you are in a Persian book shop. Ask for 'these six books, please' in Persian.
- 10** How would you use the *-ān* plural with a word such as 'star' in Persian?

.....

Grammar reference unit

Moving a step further

All the lone words and single phrases of greeting and the names of the days of the week, numbers and plurals should have built up a good store of vocabulary for you. So now it is time to start forming proper sentences, starting with the very simple and gradually working towards understanding and using Persian in a more realistic manner.

Before we can go on, however, we need to look at the most common terminology that is used to describe grammar and rules of forming verbs, tenses and so on. Luckily the rules of Persian grammar are relatively logical and quite simple and, compared with many other languages spoken in the Middle East, can be learnt rather effortlessly. Familiarizing yourself with these technical terms and ‘jargon’ will therefore make it easier to follow the subsequent units.

Grammatical glossaries and meanings

Syntax and word order

First of all, it is important to note that the simple and normal word order in Persian is:

Subject - object - verb
i.e. I - cat - saw

In English, of course, the word order is:

Subject - verb - object
I saw (the) cat

Gradually, we will be able to introduce other elements into the sentence and will end up with the following:

Subject - adverb of time - adverb of manner - direct object - indirect object - adverb of place - verb.

But, for the time being, let us focus on the fundamental components of the sentence.

Subject

(*I* in the example sentence.) The subject is the doer or the agent or performer of the action in the sentence.

Object

(*cat* in the example sentence.) The object is a noun or equivalent or a string of words forming a clause, towards which the action of the verb is directed or on whom the action is performed.

Verb

(*saw* in the example sentence.) The verb is a word that expresses an action, a state or feeling or what is becoming of, or happening to, someone or something.

I have to tell you that these rules are not always followed in the spoken language and you may often hear native speakers of Persian using the subject-verb-object order in the sentences, which would bring it closer to the English sentence structure.

This word order makes it harder to follow what's going on, because the listener has to wait until the speaker gets to the end of the sentence before he can work out what action is being discussed!

Just remember that in this book the verb in our Persian sentences is the *final component* in the sentence. However, in different situations the word order may be moved around in the sentence. There is not much point in going into detail on all the ways the word order rules can be broken as this is usually done in archaic prose, in the colloquial language or in stylized texts such as film scripts or novels.

For a sentence with the verb 'to be', that is 'am, are, is, were, was', the order is: subject – predicate – 'to be' (known as the *copula*). In such sentences, the subject can be a noun, a phrase or a pronoun, and in more advanced language, the subject of a sentence can be an infinitive for example.

The word order, of course, becomes more complex as we learn more and more about the language. A slightly more advanced sentence will have other components such as question words (interrogatives), adverbs and direct as well as indirect objects and then the sentences can become even more complex as we look at relative clauses and conditional sentences for example. The objective of this book, however, is to teach you the basics of the grammar and, hopefully, you will be able to build on this functional knowledge and take it further.

I have tried to explain the meaning of technical terms or grammatical jargon that I have used in the following units, as it is impossible to avoid them totally. Besides you only ever need to learn these words once and they will always come handy when you try to learn another new language.

Insight

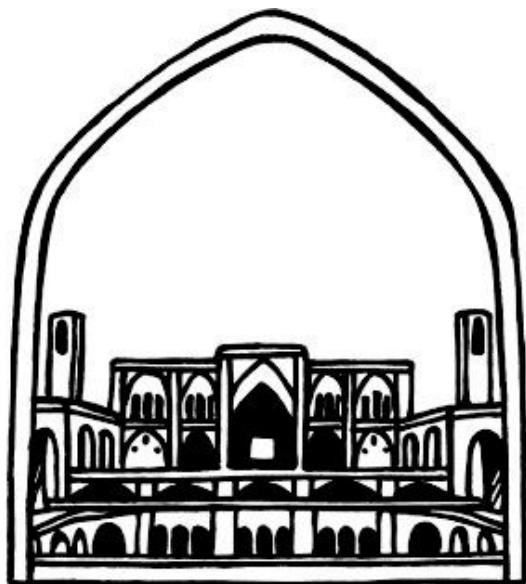
Every Persian verb has an ending known as the ‘subject suffix’ that tells you who is doing the action. As there are singular and plural second persons in Persian this means that you can have six little endings that tell you who the doer or subject of the verb is. You only need to learn these six endings once (in fact you only need five for simple past tenses) and use them with all the verbs. This would be as if your English verbs would look like, for example, went-I, went-he, went-we or bought-he, bought-I or live-we, live-you, live-they.

Exercise 1

Unit 3, Exercise 1 (0:54)

What form of greeting would you use if you were asked to say:

‘good morning’, ‘good afternoon, Maryam’, ‘thank you very much, Reza’, ‘goodbye, Ali, safe journey’, ‘good night, ladies and gentlemen’?



Aqa Bozorg Mosque and Madrasah Complex, Kashan

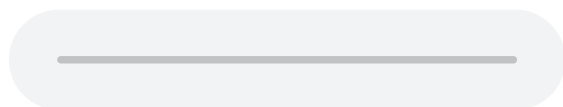
.....

Where are you from? What do you do?

In this unit you will learn how to

- *Say where you are from*
 - *Ask how someone is*
 - *Give basic personal information*
 - *Say your nationality and occupation*
-

Dialogue



Unit 4, Dialogue 1 (1:23)

Listen to Maryam (M) and Babak (B) greeting each other and enquiring after each other's health. Maryam then introduces a new friend, Yasaman (Y) to Babak. (Note the use of plural verb endings to show respect and formality.)

مریم جان، سلام!	ب
به! بابک جان، سلام، صبح بخیر. چطوری؟	م
مرسی، قریانت، بد نیستم، تو چطوری؟ خوبی؟	ب
خیلی خوبم، مرسی.	م
مریم جان تنها هستی؟	ب
نه، بابک، با دوستم هستم. با دوستم، یاسمن. یاسمن	م
این بابک است. بابک نقاش است.	
سلام.	ی
سلام، یاسمن خانم. خوشوقتم. شما ایرانی هستید؟	ب
بله من ایرانی هستم ولی مادرم روس است. شما اهل	ی
کجا هستید؟	
من شیرازی هستم. شما مثل مریم دانشجو هستید؟	ب
نه، من دانشجو نیستم، من عکاس هستم.	ی
به! به! چه خوب! مریم، امشب منزل هستی؟	ب
بله من و یاسمن امشب منزل هستیم.	م

B *maryam jān, salām!*

M *bah! bābak jān, salām, sobh-bekheyr. chetori?*

B *mersi, qorbānat, bad nistam, to chetori? khubi?*

M *kheyli khubam, mersi.*

B *maryam jān tanhā hasti?*

M *na, bābak, bā dustam hastam. bā dustam, yāsaman. yāsaman in bābak ast. bābak naqqāsh ast.*

Y *salām.*

B *salām yāsaman khānom. khoshvaqtam. shomā irāni hastid?*

Y *bale, man irāni hastam, vali mādaram rus ast. shomā ahl-e kojā hastid?*

B *man shirāzi hastam. shomā mesl-e maryam dāneshju hastid?*

Y *na, man dāneshju nistam, man 'akkās hastam.*

B *bah! bah! che khub! maryam, emshab manzel hasti?*

M *bale, man o yāsaman emshab manzel hastim.*

B Hi, (dear) Maryam!

M Wow! Hi (dear) Babak, good morning. How are you?

B Thanks, kind of you to ask (lit. I am your sacrifice). (I am) not bad, how are you? Are you well?

M (I am) very well, thank you.

B Maryam (dear), are you alone?

M No, Babak, I am with my friend. With my friend Yasaman. Yasaman, this is Babak. Babak is (a) painter.

Y Hello.

B Hello, (miss) Yasaman. Pleased to meet you. Are you (pl.) Iranian?

Y Yes, I am Iranian, but my mother is Russian. Where are you (pl.) from?

B I am from Shiraz (lit. I am Shirazi). Are you a student like Maryam?

Y No, I am not (a) student, I am (a) photographer.

B Wow! Great! Maryam, are you at home tonight?

M Yes, Yasaman and I are at home tonight.

Quick Vocab

chetor?	<i>how?</i>	چطور؟
i	short, contracted form of <i>you (sing.) are, i.e. you're</i>	ی
tanhā	<i>alone</i>	تنها
dust	<i>friend</i>	دوست
-am	[suffix] <i>my, دوستم my friend</i>	م
naqqāsh	<i>painter</i>	نقاش
khoshvaqt	<i>fortunate, happy</i>	خوشوقت
-am	short, contracted form of <i>I am,</i> <i>i.e. I'm</i>	م
khoshvaqtam	<i>I'm happy</i>	خوشوقتم
rus	<i>Russian</i>	روس
shomā	<i>you (pl.)</i>	شما
ahl	<i>native of, (also to have a liking for s.t.)</i>	أهل
kojā	question word <i>where?</i>	کجا
mesl	<i>like, similar to</i>	مثل
dāneshju	<i>student</i>	دانشجو
nistam	negative of <i>to be, i.e. I am not</i>	نیستم
'akkās	<i>photographer</i>	عکاس
bah! bah!	sign of exclamation meaning <i>wonderful, lovely</i>	به! به!
manzel	<i>home, house</i>	منزل

Present tense of 'to be'

The dialogue shows you the simple forms of the present tense of the verb 'to be' as in 'I am', 'you are', 'we are', etc.

The Persian verb 'to be' can be expressed in two ways: in the full form or condensed. In English, you can say either 'I am a student' or 'I'm a student'. In other words, there is a full, stand-alone form of the verb, like 'I am' and there is an abbreviated, contracted form like 'I'm'.

The full form of the verb 'to be' in Persian expresses a slightly different state from its English equivalent. It means more 'to exist' or 'there is' than 'to be', while the English variation is really a matter of style: formal or colloquial.

Before we go on any further and look at the Persian form of 'to be' it is important for you to note that the Persian verbs 'to be' and 'to have' are totally irregular. This means that they have rules of their own and do not fit wholly in the more or less regular system of verb conjugation that applies to other Persian verbs. Having said that, they are very easy to learn and getting to grips with them early on will make some future grammatical explanations a lot simpler to follow.

Full forms of 'to be' in the present tense

The six cases of the full present tense of the verb *to be* are shown in the following table.

Singular	Plural
هستم <i>hastam</i> I am	هستیم <i>hastim</i> we are
هستی <i>hasti</i> you are	هستید <i>hastid</i> you are
هست <i>hast</i> s/he, it, this, that is	هستند <i>hastand</i> they, these, those are

The use of the full form implies either formality or the sense that one *exists* in the state expressed. For

example: من ایرانی هستم *man irāni hastam* 'I am Iranian' is used either in a formal setting or means that the speaker wishes to put some stress on the fact that he or she *exists* as an Iranian. Similarly,

آنها خسته هستند *ānhā khaste hastand* 'they are tired' means that they are in an exhausted state, putting more stress on the fact that they are tired.

The distinction is not so important in colloquial, spoken Persian.

Insight

The verb 'to be' in Persian behaves very similarly to the English verb 'to be' in the sense that it is irregular and its present, past and conditional forms display hardly any family resemblance. Compare 'I am' to 'I was', 'I would' and 'I will be'. This happens in Persian too.

Attached, contracted forms of 'to be' in the present tense

As already mentioned, the verb 'to be' can also appear as an attached ending, not dissimilar to 'you're nice' as opposed to 'you are nice'. The present tense of the verb 'to be', in its attached form, consists simply of six personal endings or suffixes. If you look at the full form, you will see that the short suffixes are just the endings of the full form. These abbreviated suffixes are then fixed onto the preceding word in the sentence. Later on in the book, when we look more closely at forming Persian verbs, these same endings, with one exception, will be used as the compulsory suffixes of all verbs.

The attached forms of 'to be' are found in the following table:

Singular	Plural
م -am I am	یم -im we are
ی -i you are	ید -id you are
ست -ast he, she, it is	ند -and they, these are

The following table illustrates how the endings correspond to the full form of the verb and to the personal pronouns.

Singular	Plural
م am ↔ هستم I ↔ من	یم are ↔ هستیم we ↔ ما
ی are ↔ هستی you (sing.) ↔ تو	ید are ↔ هستید you (pl.) ↔ شما
ست is ↔ هست he, she, it ↔ او	ند are ↔ هستند they ↔ ایشان

The full, complete example of the verb 'to be well', used in the dialogue in this unit, is as follows:

I am well خوب + م ↔ خوبم

you are well خوب + ی ↔ خوبی

he/she/it is well خوب + ست ↔ خوبست

we are well (ما) خوب + ایم ↔ ما خوبیم

you (pl.) are well (شما) خوب + ید ↔ شما خوبید

they are well (آنها-ایشان) خوب + ند ↔ آنها خوبند

Insight

Because the ending of every verb tells you who is doing the action you don't need to use the subject pronouns *I* or *he* or *they* unless you wish to put some stress on who is doing the action.

Combination or clash of vowels

As we mentioned earlier in this book, Persian does not allow for a long and a short vowel to come together. This means, for example, that the sound *e* cannot follow the sound *ā* or *u*. This combination of vowels, of course, does not happen in words. However, whenever there is a need to join a short and a long vowel together, as we occasionally have to do to form verbs, we must insert a *buffer* between the two vowels to ensure that both vowels can be pronounced easily.

There are clear rules for doing this. When short forms of the verb 'to be' are joined to words ending in *-e* (ه، هـ), such as بچه *bache*, and *-i* (ی), an *alef* is used as a buffer and inserted between the two vowels:

Singular

I am a child بچه ام

you (sing.) are a child بچه ای

he, she is a child بچه است

Plural

we are children بچه ایم

you (pl.) are children بچه اید

they are children بچه اند

Or using خسته *khaste*, meaning 'tired' as an example:

Singular

I am a tired خسته ام

you (sing.) are a tired خسته ای

he, she is a tired خسته است

Plural

we are tired خسته ایم

you (pl.) are tired خسته اید

they are tired خسته اند

How about a word ending with the long vowel *i*, e.g. ایرانی *irāni*, 'Iranian'?:

Singular

I am a Iranian ایرانی ام / ایرانیم
you (sing.) are a Iranian ایرانی ای
he, she is a Iranian
ایرانی است / ایرانیست

Plural

we are Iranian ایرانی ایم
you (pl.) are Iranian
ایرانی اید / ایرانید
they are Iranian ایرانی اند / ایرانند

And a word ending in long vowel **و** *u*, like خوشرو *khoshru*, 'cheerful':

Singular

I am a cheerful خوشرویم
you (sing.) are a cheerful خوشروی
he, she is a cheerful خوشروست

Plural

we are cheerful خوشرویم
you (pl.) are cheerful خوشرویید
they are cheerful خوشرویند

Insight

Persian subject endings or suffixes are culled from the Persian verb 'to be'. In fact they are the truncated, short forms of the verb 'to be'. The verb 'to be' is the only verb that can be shortened. This is not exactly the same but very similar to the verb 'you are' shortened to *you're*. The negative form, however, cannot be shortened in the same way. So there is no *you aren't* in Persian!

Negative form of the present tense of 'to be'

The negative of the present tense of the verb 'to be' is formed by adding the personal subject endings to the verb **نیست** *nist*. There are *no short forms* for the negative verb of 'to be'.

Singular

Plural

I am not **نیستم**

we are not **نیستیم**

you (sing.) are not **نیستی**

you (pl.) are not **نیستید**

he, she is not **نیست**

they are not **نیستند**

Other examples:

we are well **خوبیم**

I am (a) teacher **معلمم**

they are Iranian **ایرانی‌اند / ایرانی‌اند**

it is cold **سردست**

you are students **دانشجویید**

you sing. are a girl **دختری**

he is (a) boy **پسرست**

Since Persian verb forms always tell you who the subject or the 'doer' of the verb is, the additional use of personal pronouns is not always necessary; however, their use emphasizes the person of the subject. For example:

I am not Chinese. I am Japanese. **مَنْ چینی نیستم، ژاپنی هستم.**

Insight

The negative of the present tense of 'to be' in Persian is the only irregular negative formation. Usually you only need to add a 'na' or 'ne' sound to the verb to get the negative. But to form the negative of the present tense of 'to be' you must drop the initial 'h' and add a 'ni'.

Asking questions in Persian

Unit 4, Dialogue 2 (0:51)

Persian has the equivalent of all the English question words such as 'why', 'where', 'who', etc., and some more; however, one of the easiest ways to form a question is to say something and make it sound like a question by raising your intonation. This is very common in spoken Persian, especially in sentences with 'to be'. Listen to the audio and you'll get a better idea of the change of tone in question sentences.

They are Iranian. *ān-hā irāni hastand*. آنها ایرانی هستند.

They are Iranian? (as opposed to Are they Iranian?) *ān-hā irāni hastand?*

آنها ایرانی هستند؟

Tehran is expensive. *tehrān gerān ast*. تهران گران است.

Tehran is expensive? (as opposed to Is Tehran expensive?) *tehrān gerān ast?*

تهران گران است؟

Insight

There is a subtle difference between the third person singular forms ‘ast’ and ‘hast’, even if both seemingly mean ‘he/she is’. ‘ast’ corresponds to the English ‘is’ as in ‘this *is* my house’ or ‘Maryam *is* Shirin’s sister’. ‘hast’, on the other hand, conveys the English sense of *there is* as in ‘*there is* a coffee machine on every floor’ or when you call the surgery and ask: ‘*Is* the doctor in today?’ With the answer: ‘Yes, Dr Ahmadi *is* in from 2 to 6 pm.’

Exercise 1

Rewrite the following sentences using the short forms of the verb ‘to be’, then translate them into English:

- ۱ این قالیچه گران است.
- ۲ آن اتاق خیلی بزرگ نیست ولی تمیز است.
- ۳ آنها در اتوبوس هستند.
- ۴ آن دخترها خواننده نیستند.
- ۵ شما با مریم دوست هستید؟

Exercise 2

Translate these sentences into Persian:

- 1 This peach is delicious.
 - 2 Maryam is a painter.
 - 3 You (pl.) are tired.
 - 4 I am young.
 - 5 We are in Tehran.
-

Insight

A lot of Persian grammatical functions are performed by adding prefixes or suffixes that themselves are a long or a short vowel, or end or begin with short vowels like 'i' or 'be' or 'na' or 'and'. If two vowels, one as part of the word and the other as part of the suffix or prefix, come together then we have to erect little buffers between these two converging vowels to make sure they each retain their individual pronunciation.

Exercise 3

Give full negative answers to the following questions:

- ۱ آن پسر اسکاتلندی است؟
- ۲ شما با ایرج دوست هستید؟
- ۳ من ورزشکار هستم؟
- ۴ آنها خیلی خسته اند؟
- ۵ شما نقاشید؟

Exercise 4

Rewrite the dialogue, using the short forms of the verb 'to be' wherever appropriate.

Something to remember

- As well as using the question words 'what', 'where' and so on, Persian speakers use the tone of voice to make questions, while in English the word order is changed to make questions. So the Persian equivalent of 'Is the library open today?' would still be 'the library is open today?' but the last word will be uttered in an inquisitive more high pitched tone.

Complete the following:

- 1 In a normal written Persian sentence where would you put the verb?
- 2 Introduce yourself in Persian, following the pattern: My name is _____. I am _____ (supply your nationality where the blank is).
- 3 Ask how someone is using two common Persian models.
- 4 How do you ask someone you have met for the first time 'What is your name?'
- 5 Put the following in the correct order:
من- هست- ایرانی- شوهرم- ولی- هستم-
- 6 Say 'they are happy' in Persian using both the full and short forms of the verb 'are'.
- 7 How is the negative of the verb 'to be' in the present tense formed? Can you say 'I am not tired' or 'Alex and Isabel are not German'?
- 8 Do you always need to use a pronoun in Persian sentences? Why?
- 9 Can you remember three professions or occupations in Persian you have seen in the units so far?
- 10 Correct the following sentence:
من اهل شیراز هستید و در لندن دانشجو هست.

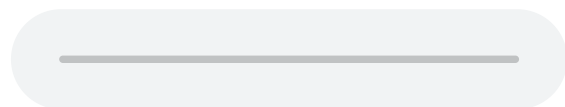


Family, friends and other people

In this unit you will learn how to

- *Give more personal information using pronouns*
 - *Describe characteristics using adjectives*
 - *Describe family relationships and associations*
-

Dialogue



Unit 5, Dialogue 1 (1:27)

Listen to the conversation between Maryam and Amir, who have just been introduced by Dariush. Can you work out the relationships?

د	مریم جان، این دوست من امیر است. امیر، مریم دخترخاله من است.
ا	سلام مریم. شما دخترخاله داریوش هستید؟
م	بله، من دخترخاله او هستم. شما دوست داریوش هستید؟
ا	من همکلاس داریوش هستم.
م	اسم فامیل شما چیست؟
ا	اسم فامیل من اخوان است.
م	اخوان؟ شما برادر سارا نیستید؟
ا	چرا، من برادر بزرگ سارا هستم. سارا دوست شماست؟
م	بله، سارا دوست خیلی خوب من است و تولد من و سارا هم یکروز است.
ا	جدا؟ چه جالب! پس تولد شما ماه آینده است؟
م	بله، تولد شما کی است؟
ا	تولد من ماه آبان است. مریم خانه تو کجاست؟
م	خانه من در خیابان سعدی است. خانه تو کجاست؟
ا	خانه ما در قلّهک است.

D	Maryam (dear), this is my friend Amir. Amir, Maryam is my cousin.
A	Hi, Maryam. Are you Dariush's cousin?
M	Yes, I am his cousin. Are you a friend of his?
A	I am Dariush's classmate.
M	What's your surname?
A	My surname is Akhavan.
M	Akhavan? Are you not Sara's brother?
A	Yes, I am Sara's older brother. Is Sara your friend?
M	Yes, Sara is my very good friend and Sara and my birthdays are on the same day.
A	Really? How interesting! So your birthday is next month?
M	Yes. When is your birthday?
A	My birthday is in the month of Aban. Maryam, where is your house?
M	My house is on Sa'di Avenue. Where is your house?
A	Our house is in Qolhak.

Quick Vocab

dust	<i>friend</i>	دوست
dokhtarkhāle	<i>cousin, daughter of maternal aunt</i>	دخترخاله
hamkelās	<i>classmate</i>	همکلاس
esm-e fāmil	<i>lit. family name, surname</i>	اسم فامیل
tavalod	<i>birth (also birthday)</i>	تولد
yekruz	<i>lit. one day, meaning the same day too</i>	یکروز
Jeddan	<i>Arabic word structure as adverb meaning really, seriously</i>	جداً
che?	<i>what? and vocative exclamation as in how wonderful!</i>	چه
Jāleb	<i>interesting</i>	جالب
pas	<i>so, in that case, therefore</i>	پس
māh	<i>month; moon</i>	ماه
āyande	<i>next, future</i>	آینده
bale	<i>yes</i>	بله
kay	<i>when?</i>	کی؟
khāne	<i>house, home</i>	خانه
kojā?	<i>where?</i>	کجا؟
dar	<i>in, at, inside</i>	در
khlyābān	<i>street, avenue</i>	خیابان



Stall door panel, Isfahan, 17th century

Personal pronouns

	Singular	Plural
1st	من <i>man</i> I	ما <i>mā</i> we
2nd	تو <i>tū</i> to you	شما <i>shomā</i> you
3rd	او <i>ū</i> he, she, it	ایشان/آنها <i>ānhā</i> they

Persian has an honorific system of pronouns. Something similar happens in French, when you have to choose between ‘tu’ and ‘vous’ when addressing a person. In general, all the plural pronouns can be used to indicate formality and respect. For example, in an Iranian primary classroom, children rarely refer to themselves in the first person singular but refer to themselves as ‘we’ in order to show humility and respect towards the teacher. Similarly, the third person plural ‘they’ can be used to refer to a singular third party in a formal setting and to show respect. (Incidentally, be warned that the formal pronouns can also be used to show disdain and contempt!) As you can see, there are two second person pronouns:

تو *to*, is used at times of great intimacy to address close friends, loved ones and children

شما *shomā*, as well as its function as the second person plural pronoun, is used to address a singular person to observe formality and to indicate respect between strangers and elders as well as in the peer groups.

Exercise 1

How would you address or refer to the following in Persian? Use the appropriate pronoun.

- 1 Your new, elderly neighbour.
 - 2 Your closest friend.
 - 3 The bank manager.
 - 4 Your cousin’s small child.
 - 5 The immigration officer.
-

Insight

In a Persian sentence, things that belong together in a clause, such as a noun and its descriptive adjectives, or a noun, its adjectives and its possessor, must be vocally linked by the vowel 'e'. It's almost as if the words in this vocally strung chain end with the vowel 'e' rhyming with the French 'café'.

How to describe something or someone?: linking nouns, adjectives and pronouns

Before being able to use the personal pronouns in even a simple or meaningful construction, such as 'my name', 'your brother' or 'his car', and then giving more information such as 'your elder brother' or 'his blue car', we must learn one of the most fundamental characteristics of the Persian language.

Both in written and in spoken Persian, we must show an agreement and correspondence between nouns, pronouns, adjectives and prepositions. We must be able to demonstrate *possession* or *close association*.

Look at the following English construction: 'my fast, beautiful, expensive, thoroughbred, young horse'. In this example, there is no sign in the script or any indication when spoken, that joins the adjectives ('young, fast, beautiful', etc.) to one another or ultimately to the possessor ('my') and from there onto the noun ('horse').

The native speaker of English knows, and the learner will soon understand, that these adjectives tell us something about the noun ('horse') they describe and that the whole 'package' belongs to a first person speaker, demonstrated by 'my'.

In Persian, however, a noun, the adjectives that describe it and the owner that possesses the whole thing, must be treated as pearls strung together by a thread that runs through them. In other words, a sound or a written sign must hold the whole construction together. This, at times, invisible chord or link, is known as the *ezafe*, literally meaning 'addition'. It sounds like the vowel 'e', as in 'end' or 'ye' as in 'yes'. The complete rules for writing it will be given a little further on in this unit, but first let us see how the adjective works in Persian.

Adjectives

Adjectives in Persian are remarkably similar to adjectives in English with one exception. In Persian, an adjective follows the noun it qualifies or describes, instead of preceding it, as is the case in English. In Persian this combination of a noun and its adjective (or adjectives) is held together by the *ezafe*, a vowel that connects the two.

For example, 'blue pencil' is **مدادِ آبی** *medād-e ābi* in Persian, as if you were saying: 'pencil-e-blue'.

Here is a trick to help you work out the correct Persian order of nouns and adjectives. Write down your English noun and the adjective that describes it. Write the Persian equivalent of each English word underneath it and then read the Persian words in the natural direction of the language, that is from right to left. This should give you the correct order of nouns and adjectives as spoken or read in Persian. You should be able to see that the adjective is following the noun it describes:

→ blue pencil
مدادِ آبی ←
← ←

So, adjectives in Persian always *follow* the noun they qualify or describe and are joined to it by the vowel *e* or *ye* **ی** if the noun ends in a long vowel such as *ā* **آ** or *u* **و**.

آبِ گرم - درسِ سخت - هوای سرد - شبهای تاری - موی بلند
- صندلی راحت

A group, i.e. noun + attributive adjective, may in its turn be qualified by another adjective:

شبِ تاریکِ سرد - پسرِ کوچکِ کمرو

'shy small boy' 'cold dark night'




When two or more adjectives qualify the same noun in the same way, they are co-ordinated:



شبِ تاریک و سرد - تاریخِ سیاسی و اقتصادی - همسایه خوب و مهربان

Insight

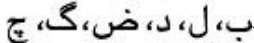





With simple sentences that contain a noun, adjective and possessor, you can write the Persian translation of the English beneath it and then read it from right to left and you will get the correct Persian order. Remember to link the noun and adjective to each other and then to the possessor 'I' with an 'e'. E.g. 'my young friend', read from right to left in Persian, will be 'dust-e javān-e man'. This shows you that in Persian the adjective follows the noun it describes and the possessor, whether just a pronoun or a whole string of words such as 'Ali's classmates', will be last in the chain.





Writing rules for the *ezafe* link between noun–adjective, noun–pronoun, noun–noun

There are three ways of 'writing down' this basically vocal 'link' in the script, by adding either an ,  or  to the word, which is then followed by an adjective or a possessor.

Remember, the first two signs of  and  are only ever used in the script either to help a beginner or to avoid ambiguity.

The following box sets out the rules for the use of the *ezafe* to create a link between the noun, adjective and pronoun or another noun:

- 1 If the word ends in a consonant (e.g. ) always use  pronounced *e* as in egg.
 - 2 If the word ends in a short final vowel (e.g. silent *h*, ) always use  pronounced *ye* as in yesterday.
 - 3 If the word ends in the long vowels *u* or *ā* () always use  pronounced *ye* as in yesterday.
-

The third option must *always* be used if words ending with long vowels  or , such as  *pā* foot, or  *mu* hair are then linked to an adjective, a pronoun or another noun.

Reminder: The short final vowel is denoted by the *silent h*, in words like  *khāne* 'house' or  *bache* 'child'.

Use of pronouns 'me', 'you' etc.

Unit 5, Dialogue 2 (2:03)

In English, when you identify an object such as a book as yours, you simply say 'my book'. In Persian, the 'book' کتاب *ketāb* and 'my' من *man* must not only be written together, they must also be *linked in speech*, so much so that the final 'b', ب of the کتاب is linked to the initial 'm', م of من, with the help of the *ezafe*, which will either sound like *e* as in 'egg', or a *ye* as in 'yesterday'.

Try reading the following examples, paying full attention to the vocalization, but first listen to the individual words being read out without their being linked:

کتاب *ketāb* book

من *man* me, mine, my

کتاب من *ketāb-e man* my book (lit. book of me)

سیب *sib* apple

شیرین *shirin* sweet

من *man* my

سیب شیرین *sib-e shirin* sweet apple

سیب شیرین من *sib-e shirin-e man* my sweet apple

دوست علی *dust-e Ali* Ali's friend

دوست خوب علی *dust-e khub-e Ali* Ali's good friend

دوست خوب برادر علی *dust-e khub-e barādar-e Ali* Ali's brother's good friend (lit. good friend of Ali's brother)

خانه *khāne* house

بزرگ *bozorg* big, large

تو *to* you (sing.)

خانه تو *khāne-ye to* your (sing.) house

خانه بزرگ تو *khāne-ye bozorg-e to* your (sing.) big house

کتاب فارسی *ketāb-e farsi* Persian book

کتاب فارسی من *ketāb-e farsi-ye man* my Persian book

مو *mu* hair

سیاه *siyāh* black

موی سیاه *mu-ye siyāh* black hair

موی سیاه علی *mu-ye siyāh-e Ali* Ali's black hair

Insight

Using or not using the *ezafe* link ‘e’ between nouns, adjectives, and possessors properly is one of the indicators of how well you are learning to read Persian. The vocal link ‘e’ is just a diacritical marker ‘ ’ sitting below the last letter and you can soon be weaned off it.

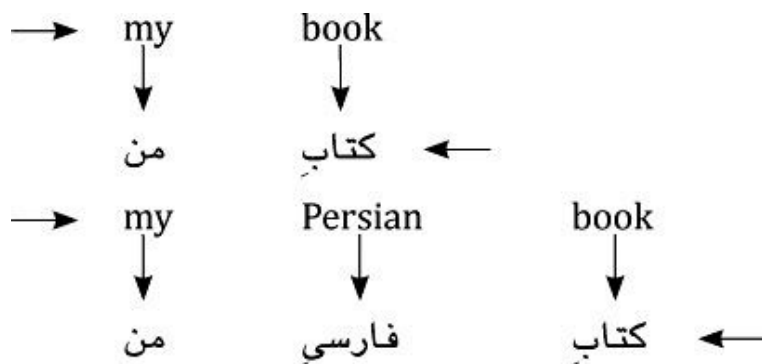
Note that ‘hair’ *mu* ends in a long *u* vowel and therefore the *ezafe* link to the adjective must be a *ye*. Similarly, ‘house’ *khāne* ends in a short, final vowel (using the letter *h* to represent this vowel) and must be linked to the adjective with a *ye*, indicated by the diacritic *ه*.

Summary

- 1 In Persian, unlike in English, adjectives always *follow* the noun: that means you will have to say ‘apple sweet’, ‘book big’, ‘weather good’, ‘woman noble’.
- 2 Similarly, the possessor always comes after the possessed thing, or at the end of the package if the possessed comes with adjectives; that means we have to say ‘book my’ or ‘book Persian my’.

Short cut

Remember that in translating a simple English noun–adjective expression, you can write out the Persian translation of each word directly underneath the corresponding English words and then read the end result from right to left; this should give you the translation of your English phrase:



And, of course, the reverse will also work. If you want to translate the Persian into English you can just read the Persian from left to right!

Let's return to the original construction now (earlier in this unit) and see if we can work out how to say 'my fast, beautiful, expensive, thoroughbred, young horse' in Persian:

From left to right:

→ my fast beautiful expensive thoroughbred young horse

Now, write the Persian for each word underneath the English:

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
تُنْدُرُو مَن زِیْبَا گِرَان اَصِیْلِ جَوَان اَسْبَ

Then, choose the appropriate *ezafe* ending for each noun or adjective by looking at the last letter. Is it a consonant, a long or a short vowel?

Now read the linked words from right to left and, bingo!, you should get:

اَسْبَ جَوَانِ اَصِیْلِ گِرَانِ زِیْبَایِ تَنْدُرُویِ مَن

(This exaggerated construction was made up to illustrate the function of the *ezafe*. In practice very long descriptive constructions such as these are broken into smaller units and linked together with 'and'.)

Insight

If a word that has to be linked to the next ends in a vowel ‘ā’ or ‘u’ or short vowel ‘e’ then your vocal link will sound like ‘ye’. After long vowels ‘ā’ and ‘u’ this sound **has to be** written in as ‘**ی**’; however, with words ending with the short vowel ‘e’ all you need is the diacritical marker **ـِ** that sits on the vowel-carrying letter and will look like ‘**یِ**’ or ‘**وِ**’. This is still pronounced as ‘ye’.

Exercise 2

(a) Read the following constructions and then translate them into English:

۱ باغ بزرگ	۶ شب تارِیکِ سرد
۲ کتابِ فارسیِ مریم	۷ دانشگاهِ لندن
۳ مردِ ایرانی	۸ خانهٔ قدیمی
۴ دخترهای دوستِ من	۹ قوریِ چینیِ خواهرِ مهربانِ بابک
۵ غذایِ خوشمزه	

(b) Translate the following into Persian:

- 1 Sweet grapes.
- 2 Maryam’s Russian friend.
- 3 Mr Ahmadi’s car.
- 4 Large, nice room.
- 5 Handmade, Kashan carpets.
- 6 Old, historic city.
- 7 Cold, sunny day.
- 8 Her neighbour.
- 9 My green umbrella.
- 10 Old, kind men.

(c) Translate the following passage into Persian:

My name is Ali. I am Iranian. I am a student in Tehran. This is my sister Maryam. Maryam's birthday is in December. Her friend's brother is my classmate. His name is Mehrdad. Mehrdad's hair is brown. His house is in Afshar Avenue.

(d) Here are some more useful adjectives. Can you join them up with the nouns in the other column?

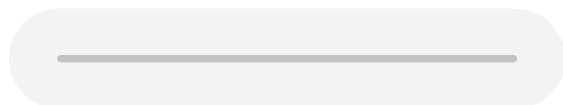
Quick Vocab

<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Translation</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Translation</i>
ارزان	cheap	خانه	house
سیاه	black	غذا	food, dish
گرم	warm	میوه	fruit
گران	expensive	صندلی	chair
سرد	cold	هوا	weather, air
طلایی	golden	چشم	eyes
خوشمزه	tasty	مو	hair
بدمزه	horrid tasting	گربه	cat
راحت	comfortable	تابستان	summer
ناراحت	uncomfortable	کفش	shoe

Insight

Persian has very clear, intuitive names for the eight sets of cousins on the maternal and paternal sides. The easiest way to deal with these is to learn the four names of aunts and uncles on the maternal and paternal sides and then your cousins will be son, *pesar*, or daughter, *dokhtar* of any of these four.

Talking about yourself and your family



Unit 5, Dialogue 3 (1:01)

Now that you know how to link words that belong together, you can talk, in very basic terms, about your family. Remember we still haven't got as far as using verbs extensively, so here we will only concentrate on saying things like 'my sister', 'your husband', 'our grandfather' etc.

In order to do this you need to use the relevant personal pronoun chosen from the six given in the table earlier in the unit and link it to the appropriate member of the family. This vocabulary list should help.

Quick Vocab

mādar	<i>mother</i>	مادر
pedar	<i>father</i>	پدر
khāhar	<i>sister</i>	خواهر
barādar	<i>brother</i>	برادر

mādar-bozorg	<i>grandmother</i>	مادر بزرگ
pedar-bozorg	<i>grandfather</i>	پدر بزرگ
dā'i	<i>maternal uncle</i>	دایی
'amu	<i>paternal uncle</i>	عمو
khāle	<i>maternal aunt</i>	خاله
'ame	<i>paternal aunt</i>	عمه
zan – hamsar – khānom	<i>wife</i>	زن – (همسر) – خانم
showhar – hamsar	<i>husband</i>	شوهر – (همسر)
hamsar	<i>spouse</i>	همسر
pesar	<i>son/boy</i>	پسر
dokhtar	<i>daughter/girl</i>	دختر

The terms for eight sets of cousins (e.g. son/daughter of maternal aunt):

پسر خاله / دختر خاله *pesar-khāle/dokhtar-khāle*
 پسر دایی / دختر دایی *pesar-dā'i/dokhtar-dā'i*
 پسر عمو / دختر عمو *pesar-'amu/dokhtar-'amu*
 پسر عمه / دختر عمه *pesar-'ame/dokhtar-'ame*

And mother-in-law (two cases) and father-in-law (two cases):

مادر زن / مادر شوهر *mādar-zan/mādar-showhar*
 پدر زن / پدر شوهر *pedar-zan/pedar-showhar*

So, how would you say 'my brother', 'your (sing.) husband', 'their mother', 'our sister', 'my (daughter of maternal aunt) cousin' and 'his/her uncle's grandmother'?

Here are the answers:

برادر من *barādar-e man*
 شوهر تو *showhar-e tow*
 مادر آنها *mādar-e ānhā*
 خواهر ما *khāhar-e mā*

دُخْتَرِ خَالَةَ مِنْ *dokhtar-khāle-ye man*
مَادِرِ بَزْرُگِ عَمُویِ اَوْ *mādar-bozorg-e 'amu-ye u*

Exercise 3

Translate into Persian:

- 1 My grandmother is 92 years old. (use **ساله** after number for 'years old')
- 2 She is my cousin. (daughter of my mother's sister)
- 3 My uncle (paternal) is your father's friend.
- 4 Our brother is a doctor.
- 5 Their sister-in-law (sister of husband) and our sister are in London today.

'Suffixed' or 'attached' possessive endings

Unit 5, Dialogue 4 (1:04)

Listen to the dialogue between Amir and Maryam and see if you can spot a different way of expressing possession, without the use of pronouns:

م	آمیر، کیفم کجاست؟
ا	کیفت؟
م	بله، کیف سیاهم.
ا	آها، کیف سیاهت. اینجاست. مریم، رضا و خواهرش کجا هستند؟
م	آنها پیش همسایه مان هستند، ولی ماشینشان بیرون در خیابان است.

M	Amir, where is my bag?
A	Your bag?
M	Yes, my black bag.
A	Ah, your black bag. It's here. Maryam, where are Reza and his sister?
M	They are at our neighbour's, but their car is outside in the street.

Quick Vocab

kif	bag	کیف
-am	my	م-
kifam	my bag	کیفم
kojā	where?	کجا
-st	short form is	ست-
kojāst	where is?	کجاست
siyāh	black	سیاه
siyāham	my black...	سیاهم
āhā!	ah!, I see	آها
-at	your	ت-
siyāhat	your black...	سیاهت
dar	in, at	در
khāhar	sister	خواهر
-ash	his, hers	ش-
khāharash	his sister	خواهرش
plsh-e	at	پیش
hamsāye	neighbour	همسایه
-emān	our	مان-
hamsāye-mān	our neighbour	همسایه
māshIn	car	ماشین
-eshān	their	شان-
māshIneshān	their car	ماشینشان
birun	outside	بیرون
khiyābān	street	خیابان

In the dialogue, Maryam, looking for her bag, did not say: **کیف من** *kif-e man* 'my bag' but, instead, said

کیفم *kifam* which is another way of saying exactly the same thing: 'my bag'. Rather than using the pronoun **من** *man*, Maryam used an attached possessive ending. Similarly, when she identified the colour of her bag

she did not say: **کیف سیاه من** *kif-e siyāh-e man* but **کیف سیاهم** *kif-e siyāham* meaning 'my black bag'.

No sooner have you got used to the function of the personal pronouns 'I' **من** 'you' **تو** etc. in expressions to show possession, as in 'my friend' or 'your car', then it's time to learn another way of expressing the same thing, this time by using attached pronoun substitutes. This could be a new concept for you as there is no exact equivalent in English. The proper name for the attached pronoun is a 'suffixed possessive pronoun' which means you attach it to the end of the noun.

Writing rules

The attached possessive personal pronouns are shown on the left in the following table, while the full, subject pronouns are listed on the right.

Attached possessive pronouns		Stand-alone subject pronouns	
plural	singular	plural	singular
1 our یمان	my مَم	we ما	مَن ا ۱
2 your تان	your تَت	you شما	تُو تو ۲
3 their شان	his, hers شَش	they ایشان/آنها	او او ۳

The possessive suffixes are attached directly to words ending in consonants and the long vowel **ی**:

کتابم - پدرش - ماشینمان - طوطیش - کیفشان

However, a buffer needs to be inserted between words ending with the final, short vowel **ه, ه, ه** and the singular attached possessives (**م, ت, ش**). The buffer is the 'alef':

خانه ام - بچه ات - گربه اش

The plural attached pronouns, however, do not need to be separated from the final short vowels by a buffer:

خانه مان - بچه تان - گربه شان

Following **آ** and **و** vowels a **ی** (i.e. *ye*) buffer is inserted between the noun and the attached possessive suffixes:

کتابهایم - دوستهایشان - مویت - مویتان

Exercise 4

Translate the following possessive constructions using both the stand-alone and the attached pronouns:

- 1 my brother
- 2 their horse

- 3 our house
- 4 your (pl.) black dog
- 5 their umbrella
- 6 his friend
- 7 your (sing.) book
- 8 my kind (paternal) uncle
- 9 her grandmother
- 10 our city

Exercise 5

Translate into English:

۱۴ سیبهای سبز ترش	۱ مردگرسنه (hungry)
۱۵ مادر آن دو پسر	۲ هوای خوب (air, weather)
۱۶ مادر جوان (young) آن دو	۳ هوای خوب آفتابی (sunny)
پسر کوچک (small, young)	۴ دختر باهوش (clever)
۱۷ پدر بزرگ مهربان (kind)	۵ دانشجوی (student) جوان
۱۸ سیب شیرین شیرازی	۶ دانشجوی جوان ایرلندی
۱۹ سیب سبز و پرتقال شیرین	۷ لیموی (lemon) ترش (sour)
۲۰ روز گرم و شب سرد	۸ پنجره (window) باز (open)
۲۱ کشور (country) ایران	۹ خانه قدیمی (old)
۲۲ جزیره (island) بریتانیا	۱۰ این دو در باز
۲۳ بلیط اتوبوس تهران-اصفهان	۱۱ درهای باز
۲۴ شهرهای ایران	۱۲ این درهای باز و بزرگ
۲۵ مغازه‌های پاریس	۱۳ آن گربه (cat) سفید و قشنگ

Exercise 6

Choose your own nouns and adjectives (or groups of adjectives) from the following table to create at least ten noun-adjective + *ezafe* constructions and number them using the Persian numerals.

Adjective	Noun
ارزان	تابستان
سیاه	زمستان
گرم	ماشین
گران	مو
سرد	انگور
طلایی	بلیط
خوشمزه	صندلی
بدمزه	چای
راحت	خانه
ناراحت	کفش

Insight

A short cut to remember the six attached or suffixed possessive pronouns is to think of some English associations for the singular suffixes first: the 1st person singular ‘*am*’ is ‘*m*’ for ‘mine’ or even ‘I am’; ‘*at*’ sounds related to ‘thou- you’, and ‘*ash*’ sounds like ‘she’. Once you learn these, then think of using the ‘-ān’ plural maker that we use for living things which you could add to the singular suffixes and you should get the plural possessive endings ‘ān, tān, shān’.

Exercise 7

Translate into Persian:

- 1 My brother.
 - 2 Your small car.
 - 3 Big, expensive house.
 - 4 His comfortable (راحت) room.
 - 5 Cold cup (فنجان) of tea.
 - 6 Our golden pen.
 - 7 Cheap, black shoes.
 - 8 Delicious, sweet apples.
 - 9 Hungry (گرسنه) young boy.
 - 10 My beautiful country.
-

Test yourself

- 1 Do you remember your Persian subject pronouns? How would say ‘I’, ‘he/she’ and ‘they’?
- 2 How do Persian speakers demonstrate that an adjective describes a particular noun and, in possessive constructions, that the described item belongs to someone?
- 3 How would you say ‘my books’ in Persian? Are there any writing rules that should be observed in this instance?
- 4 How does the Persian noun–adjective–possessor order differ from that in English?
- 5 Bābak is my *pesar-khāleh* پسر خاله. What is his exact relationship to me in English?

6 I have two 'amus **عمو** (Reza and Cyrus) and one 'ameh **عمه** (Maryam), one *khāleh* **خاله** (Pari) and one 'dā'i' **دایی**. I have one *dokhtar-'ameh*, one *pesar-khāleh* and one *dokhtar-khāleh* and two *pesar-dā'is*. Draw a diagram to show the exact relation of these aunts and uncles and their children to me and my parents. Can you think of some Persian names to give these cousins?

7 Can you name three colours and three fruits in Persian?

8 Link the following nouns and adjectives in Persian as shown in the English examples: small girl, cold winter, white cat, sweet tangerine:

نارنگی - گربه - سرد - دختر - شیرین - زمستان - سفید - کوچک

9 Link the correct attached possessive suffixes to their corresponding pronoun in the table below:

مان	من
ش	تو
شان	او
تان	ما
ت	شما
ش	آنها - ایشان

10 How would you link a noun that ends in a short vowel to its adjective or possessor?

.....

Is Iran's highest mountain higher than Mt Everest?

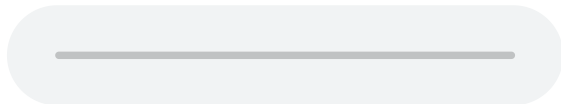
In this unit you will learn how to

- *Form and use the comparative*
- *Compare two things*
- *Form and use the superlative*

Bas-relief at Apadana Hall, Persepolis, around 518 BCE



Dialogue



Unit 6, Dialogue 1 (1:34)

Listen to Maryam and Amir talk about comparisons:

- أ** مریم، تهران بزرگتر است یا اصفهان؟
م تهران بزرگتر است.
أ هوای تهران گرمتر است یا هوای اصفهان؟
م هوای اصفهان در تابستان گرمتر است. هوای اصفهان از تهران گرمتر است.
أ اتاق من کوچک است.
م اتاق من هم خیلی کوچک است. ولی اتاق کوچک من قشنگ است.
أ اتاق تو کوچکتر ولی قشنگتر است.
م اتاق تو بزرگتر از اتاق من است ولی اتاق من از اتاق تو قشنگتر است.
أ قشنگترین شهر ایران کدام است؟
م مشهد قشنگ است، شیراز از مشهد قشنگتر است ولی اصفهان قشنگترین شهر ایران است.
أ بلندترین کوه ایران کدام است؟
م دماوند بلندترین کوه ایران است.
أ دماوند از اورست بلندتر است؟
م نه. اورست از دماوند بلندتر است. اورست بلندترین کوه دنیاست.

- A** Maryam, is Tehran bigger or Esfahan?
M Tehran is bigger.
A Is the weather warmer in Tehran or in Esfahan?
 (lit. Tehran's weather is warmer or Esfahan's)
M Esfahan (weather) is warmer in the summer. Esfahan (weather) is warmer than Tehran.
A My room is small.
M My room is also very small. However, my small room is nice.
A Your room is smaller but nicer.
M Your room is bigger than my room, but my room is nicer than yours.
A Which is the prettiest city of Iran?
M Mashhad is pretty, Shiraz is prettier than Mashhad, but Esfahan is the prettiest city in Iran.
A Which is Iran's highest mountain?
M (Mt) Damavand is Iran's highest mountain.
A Is Damavand higher than Everest?
M No. Mt Everest is higher than Damavand. Everest is the world's highest mountain.

Comparative and superlative adjectives

Unit 6, Dialogue 2 (1:53)

The formation of comparative and superlative adjectives in Persian is quite regular and not dissimilar to how it's done in English.

Comparative adjectives are made by adding a **تر** *-tar* to the adjective (similar to adding an '-er' to an English adjective):

→ small + er = smaller

← کوچک + تر = کوچکتر

kuchaktar

pretty → prettier

زیباتر ← زیبا *zibā* → *zibātar*

large → larger

بزرگتر ← بزرگ *bozorg* → *bozorgtar*

important → more important

مهمتر ← مهم *mohem* → *mohemtar*

As you see from the last example, while the formation of the comparative is not always regular in English, you can *always* form the comparative in Persian by adding a **تر** *-tar* to the adjective.

The comparative follows the noun in the exact same way as the adjective or pronoun and is linked to the noun with the *ezafe*:

larger house

khāne-ye bozorgtar خانه بزرگتر

more important news

khābar-e mohemtar خبر مهمتر

prettier flowers

golhā-ye zibātar گل‌های زیباتر

۱ مریم و بهرام یک خانه بزرگتر در شمال تهران خریده اند.

1 Maryam and Bahram have bought a larger house in North Tehran.

۲ پسر کوچکتر من هنوز به مدرسه نمی رود.

2 My younger son doesn't go to school yet.

The superlative is formed by adding a **ترین** *tarin* to the noun or, if you like, an **ین** *-in* to the comparative. Again this is similar to adding an '-est' to an English noun to form the superlative:

→ small + er = smaller

کوچک + ترین = کوچکترین ←

kuchaktarin

Or, add an **ین** to the comparative:

کوچکتر + ین = کوچکترین

زیبا ← زیباتر ← زیباترین
ziba → *zibatar* → *zibatarin*

بزرگ ← بزرگتر ← بزرگترین
bozorg → *bozorgtar* → *bozorgtarin*

important → more important → most important

مهم ← مهمتر ← مهمترین

mohem → *mohemtar* → *mohemtarin*

Insight

Forming comparatives and superlatives once again brings home to the learner the closeness of Indo-European languages. But remember that the comparative adjective, formed by addition of ‘-tar’, should follow the noun but the superlative, ‘-tarin’, must always come before the noun.

Note: Unlike the adjective and the comparative, the superlative *does not* follow the noun but comes before it and there is no *ezafe* link between the superlative and the noun it describes:

large house	<i>khāne-ye bozorg</i>	خانه بزرگ
larger house	<i>khāne-ye bozorgtar</i>	خانه بزرگتر
the biggest house	<i>bozorgtarin khāneh</i>	بزرگترین خانه
important news	<i>khābar-e mohem</i>	خبر مهم
more important news	<i>khābar-e mohemtar</i>	خبر مهمتر
the most important news	<i>mohemtarin khābar</i>	مهمترین خبر
pretty flowers	<i>golhā-ye zibā</i>	گل‌های زیبا
prettier flowers	<i>golhā-ye zibātar</i>	گل‌های زیباتر
the prettiest flowers	<i>zibātarin golhā</i>	زیباترین گلها

Tehran is the largest city in Iran. *tehrān bozorgtarin shahr-e irān ast.*

تهران بزرگترین شهر ایران است.

My brother's best friend lives in an old house. *behtarin dust-e barādaram dar yek khāne-ye qadimi zendegi mi-konad.*

بهترین دوست برادرم در یک خانه قدیمی زندگی می کند.

'Yalda' (winter solstice) is the longest night of the year. *shab-e 'yaldā' bolandtarin shab-e sāl ast.*

«شَبِ یَلدَا» بلندترین شب سال است.

Other irregularities

Occasionally, the adjective and its comparative are different words and again there is a parallel for this in English: good → better → best.

The same principle can apply to the adjective **خوب** *khub* 'good' in Persian too:

khub, behtar, behtarin ← **بِهْتَر** ← **بِهْتَرِیْن**

Although you can use **خوبتر** too but this is less common:

khub, khubtar, khubtarin ← **خوبتر** ← **خوبترِیْن**

Showing the degree of comparison

Two nouns in a sentence are compared by the use of comparative adjectives and the preposition **از** *az*, meaning 'than'. There are two types of word order in Persian to express any comparison. Look at the following simple example: Tehran is colder than Shiraz.

This sentence can be translated in two ways in Persian:

۱ **تِهْران از شیراز سردتر است.**

۲ **تِهْران سردتر از شیراز است.**

Both sentences are perfectly correct and commonly used. If you look at them closely the second sentence is perhaps closer to the English word order as the comparative adjective, 'colder', separates the two nouns (cities) that are being compared. Ignoring the verbs shown in parentheses, see how closely the sentences compare:

→ Tehran (is) colder than Shiraz.

تِهْران سردتر از شیراز (است). ←

In the first sentence, however, the preposition **از** *az* separates the two nouns that are being compared, and the comparative adjective follows the second noun:

First sentence: **تِهْران از شیراز - سردتر - است.**

Literally: Tehran *than* Shiraz - colder - is,

In either case, **از** *az* than always comes *before* the noun or object that is the standard or basis of comparison.

In the second sentence the word order is closer to the English, especially if you were to move the verb to the end of the sentence!

تهران سردتر از شیراز – است.

Tehran colder than Shiraz – is.

Here are some more examples:

موتورسیکلتِ بابک از ماشینِ احمد تندتر می رود.

motorsiklet-e bābak az māshin-e ahmad tonhtar miravad.
Babak's motorbike goes faster than Ahmad's car.

غذای هندی از غذای تایلندی تندتر است.

ghazā-ye hendi az ghazā-ye tāylandi tonhtar ast.

Indian food is hotter than Thai food.

(Note: **تند** *tond* means both 'fast' and 'spicy-hot'.)

گلِ لاله خیلی قشنگتر از گلِ میخک است.

gol-e lāle kheyli qashangta az gol-e mikhak ast.
Tulips are much prettier than carnations.

(Note: **خیلی** 'very', adverb of intensity, can precede a comparative.)

ما خیلی زودتر از شما به مهمانی رسیدیم.

mā kheyli zudtar az shomā be mehmāni rasidim.
We arrived at the party much earlier than you.

زبانِ فارسی سختتر است یا زبانِ عربی؟

zabān-e farsi sakht-tar ast yā zabān-e 'arabi?
Is Persian (language) more difficult or Arabic?

حسنِ بیشتر پول دارد یا بیژن؟

hasan bishtar pul dārad yā bizhan?
Has Hasan got more money or Bizhan?

(**Note** the use of **بیشتر** *bishtar* as 'more'.)

Insight

Persian comparative formation is a lot more regular than English. You can add ‘-tar’ to any Persian adjective to get its comparative but you can’t add ‘-er’ to all English adjectives. You can have ‘nicer’ or ‘kinder’ but not ‘beautifuler’ or ‘advanceder’.

Exercise 1

Translate the following into Persian.

- 1 Their house is nearer to the shops.
 - 2 Maryam’s brother is much taller than my brother.
 - 3 The tallest girl in the room is Brazilian.
 - 4 His house is much bigger than mine, but my garden is bigger.
 - 5 They work much harder than you.
 - 6 You speak better Persian than Maria.
 - 7 Tonight is warmer than last night.
 - 8 This is the longest night of the year.
 - 9 My best friend lives near the park.
 - 10 This film is very long, longer than ‘Dr Zhivago’.
-

Insight

When translating a sentence where two items are compared just translate each English word into Persian as you read it out, but don't forget to keep your verb to the last. This should give you the Persian version of all simple comparative sentences.

Exercise 2

Translate the following sentences into English:

- ۱ امروز گرمتر از دیروز است ولی هنوز خیلی سرد است.
- ۲ اسم کوچکترین بچه خواهرم رویاست.
- ۳ گوشت مرغ کم چربتر است یا گوشت ماهی؟
- ۴ شما زودتر از ما به رستوران رسیدید.
- ۵ امروز حالش از دیروز بهتر است.

Exercise 3

Unit 6, Exercise 3 (2:14)

Take part in a conversation with Amir, to practise comparing. You may need the following words: 'fog' is **مه**, 'sand' is **ماسه**, 'return' is **بازگشت**, 'king' is **پادشاه**, 'like' as in 'similar' is **مثل**, and 'bend it' as a footballing term is **شوت بزن!** or **شوت کن!**

You	Is Isfahan or Tehran bigger?
Amir	تهران بزرگتر است. آیا لندن از تهران بزرگتر است؟
You	Yes, London is bigger than Tehran. But the weather in Tehran is warmer.
Amir	خانه شما به مرکز شهر نزدیکتر است یا خانه افسانه؟
You	My house is nearer to the city centre but Afsaneh's house is the nearest to the park.
Amir	بهترین فیلم امسال کدام است؟
You	'The House of Sand and Fog' is very good, 'Return of the King' is better, but the best film is 'Bend it Like Beckham'.

Exercise 4

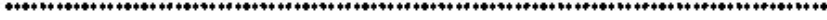
Unit 6, Exercise 4 (1:08)

Maryam wants to know your opinion about her new dress. Translate the English into Persian and see if you can understand what Maryam is saying:

You	Maryam, what a lovely dress!
Maryam	قربان تو، مرسی. این لباس خواهرم است.
You	Is your sister older or younger than you?
Maryam	خواهرم چهار سال از من کوچکتر است. او کوچکترین فرزند خانواده است.

Test yourself

- 1 How do you form the comparative adjective in Persian?
- 2 Does this rule apply to all adjectives or are there adjectives, as in English, whose comparative cannot be formed in this way?
- 3 Where does the comparative adjective go in relation to the noun?
- 4 How do you form Persian superlatives?
- 5 What is the noun–superlative order in Persian?
- 6 How do you express 'than' in Persian?
- 7 Form the Persian comparative of the following: warm, small, pretty, good.
- 8 What are the superlatives of the above adjectives?
- 9 How are two things compared in Persian?
- 10 Rearrange this sentence into its correct Persian comparative order: 'My house is warmer than Ali's (house)'.



Where is it? What? Whose is it? Why?

In this unit you will learn how to

- Ask questions about time, place and actions
- Talk about possession ('mine', 'your', etc.)
- Understand different functions of question words

Dialogue

Unit 7, Dialogue 1 (1:20)

At the London Film Festival, Maryam meets someone who studies Persian and has been to Iran. She asks him about his trip, where he has been, for how long, when and how did he get around:

م شما چه سالی به ایران رفتید؟
پ من سال ۲۰۰۲ به ایران رفتم.
م چند ماه در ایران بودید؟
پ دو ماه و نیم در ایران بودم.
م در داخل ایران خیلی مسافرت کردید؟
پ بله. به بیشتر شهرهای بزرگ ایران سفر کردم.
م مثلاً به کدام شهرها؟
پ به یزد، شیراز، اصفهان، همدان، تبریز و آلبته تهران.
م با چه وسیله ای سفر کردید؟
پ بیشتر با هواپیما، اتوبوس و ماشین شخصی سفر کردم.

M	What year did you travel to Iran?
P	I went to Iran in (the year) 2002.
M	How many months were you in Iran?
P	I was there (in Iran) for two and a half months.
M	Did you travel within Iran?
P	Yes, I travelled to most of the large Iranian cities.
M	For example (to) which cities?
P	To Yazd, Shiraz, Esfahan, Hamedan, Tabriz and, of course, Tehran.
M	How did you get around (lit. travelled by which means)?
P	I travelled mostly by plane, bus and private car.

Quick Vocab

che?	<i>what?</i>	چه؟
che sāl?	<i>what year?</i>	چه سالی؟
be	<i>to</i>	به
raftid	<i>did you (2nd person pl.) go</i> [plural used for formality]	رفتید
sāl-e do-hezār o do	<i>the year 2002</i>	سال ۲۰۰۲
raftam	<i>I went</i>	رفتم
chand?	<i>how many?</i>	چند؟
māh	<i>month</i>	ماه
budid	<i>you (2nd person pl.) were</i>	بودید
nīm	<i>half</i>	نیم
budam	<i>I was</i>	بودم
dar	<i>in, at</i>	در
dākhel	<i>inside, within</i>	داخل
kheyli	<i>much, very, many</i>	خیلی

mosāferat kardid	<i>you (2nd person pl.) travelled</i> [plural used for formality]	مُسافِرَتِ كَرْدِيدِ
bale	<i>yes</i>	بَلِه
bishtar	[followed by an ezafe (e)] <i>most of, many of</i>	بیشتر
shahr, shahr-hā	<i>city, cities</i>	شهر pl. شهرها
bozorg	<i>large, big, great</i>	بزرگ
safar kardam	<i>I travelled</i>	سَفَرِ كَرْدَم
masalan	<i>for example, for instance</i>	مَثَلًا
kodām?	<i>which?</i>	كدام؟
albate	<i>of course</i>	البته
bā	<i>with, by</i>	با
vasile-i	<i>means, tools, (here of transport) ways</i>	وسيله ای
havāpeymā	<i>aeroplane</i>	هواپیما
otobus	<i>bus</i>	اتوبوس
māshin	<i>car</i>	ماشین
shakhsi	<i>personal, private</i>	شخصی

Interrogative adjectives, adverbs and pronouns

Before you start learning Persian question words it's worth mentioning several general points about them. Persian question words seem, on the whole, to begin with the letters 'k' ك or 'ch' چ, similarly to the English question words, which often begin with the 'wh' sound. Another important point is that while all English question sentences start off with the question words, such as 'where are my glasses?', 'how did you get here?', 'who was that man?', and so on, the Persian question word's place in a sentence is where you expect to find the *answer*. For example if you ask 'who brought these flowers?', then the Persian interrogative 'who', **کی** will go at the *beginning* of the question sentence, because we are asking who the doer of the action is, i.e. we are enquiring about the identity of the 'subject' of the sentence, which always sits at the beginning of the Persian sentence or immediately after the adverb of time. However, if we ask 'where is your brother?', the Persian interrogative 'where', **کجا** does not start the sentence, rather it will be somewhere nearer the verb, where we expect to find adverbs of place. So the order would be 'your brother where is? You will soon get used to the fact that unlike English, the Persian interrogatives do not have a fixed opening place in the sentence but their position is where you would expect to find the noun, adjective or adverb answer.

Insight

Unlike English, Persian question words do not always start the sentence but rather they can appear at the beginning, in the middle or way down near the verb in a sentence, where you would expect to find the answer.

Therefore, while you will find ‘why’ at the start of a sentence, you will find the question word ‘when’ *kojā* near the verb as if you were to say in English: ‘Last night with your Iranian friends *where* did you go?’ or ‘With your savings you want *what* to do?’

Persian interrogatives may be used as pronouns, i.e. replacing nouns or subjects such as ‘who’, ‘what’ and ‘which one’, as adjectives, when they are followed by nouns as in ‘which book’, ‘what country’, ‘how many days’ and ‘what kind of ...’, or, finally, as adverbs, for example ‘when’, ‘where’, ‘why’ and ‘how’.

The question words in the dialogue are interrogative adjectives, such as ‘what year’, چه سالی, ‘how many months’, چند ماه, ‘which cities’, کدام شهرها.

Dialogue

Unit 7, Dialogue 2 (0:52)

Listen to this dialogue between Maryam and Ali, paying special attention to the position of question words in the sentences:

م علی، دیشب کجا بودی؟
 ا دیشب به سینما رفتم.
 م چه فیلمی دیدی؟
 ا یک فیلم کمدی عاشقی دیدم.
 م اسم آن فیلم چی بود؟
 ا اسمش «یک ختم و چهار عروسی» بود.
 م این فیلم چطور بود؟
 ا خیلی خوب و خنده دار بود.
 م با کی به سینما رفتی؟
 ا با فرهاد به سینما رفتم.
 م چرا با نامزدت نرفتی؟
 ا چونکه او خیلی کار داشت.
 م کی به خانه برگشتی؟
 ا ساعت یازده به خانه برگشتم.

M Ali, where were you last night?
 A I went to the cinema.
 M What film did you see?
 A I saw a romantic comedy (film).
 M What was it called? (What was its name?)
 A It was called 'Four Weddings and a Funeral'.
 M How was it?
 A It was very good and funny.
 M Who did you go to cinema with? (*lit.* with whom ...)
 A I went with Farhad.
 M Why didn't you go with your fiancée?
 A Because she was very busy (*had a lot to do*).
 M What time did you get home? (*lit.* returned)
 A I returned home at 11 o'clock.

Quick Vocab

dishab	<i>last night</i>	دیشب
kojā?	<i>where?</i>	کجا؟
budi	<i>you (sing.) were</i>	بودی
cinamā	<i>cinema</i>	سینما
raftam	<i>I went</i>	رفتم
che?	<i>what?</i>	چه؟
filmi	<i>film</i>	فیلمی
komedi	<i>comedy</i>	کمدی
'eshqi	<i>romantic, lovey-dovey</i>	عشقی
esm	<i>name, title</i>	اسم
ān	<i>that</i>	آن
chi?	<i>what?</i>	چی؟
esdash	<i>its name</i>	اسمش
khatm	<i>funeral</i>	ختم
chahār	<i>four</i>	چهار
'arusi	<i>wedding</i>	عروسی
in	<i>this</i>	این
chetor?	<i>how?</i>	چطور؟
khande-dār	<i>funny, lit. with laughter</i>	خنده دار
bā	<i>with</i>	با
ki?	<i>who, whom?</i>	کی؟
cherā?	<i>why?</i>	چرا؟
nāmzad	<i>fiancée</i>	نامزد
nāmzadat	<i>your fiancée</i>	نامزدت
narafti	<i>you did not go</i>	نرفتی
chonke	<i>because</i>	چونکه
kār dāsht	<i>was busy (lit. had work)</i>	کار داشت
key?	<i>when?</i>	کی؟
khāne	<i>house</i>	خانه
bargashti	<i>you (sing.) returned</i>	برگشتی
sā'at	<i>here means o'clock, hour of</i>	ساعت
yāzdah	<i>eleven</i>	یازده
bargashtam	<i>I returned</i>	برگشتم

Grouping of question words

Interrogative pronouns

The following are the main interrogative pronouns:

(a) **کی** or **کہ** (*ki*) 'who', pronoun:

کی بود؟ Who was it?

آنها کی هستند؟ Who are they?

(b) **چه** or **چی** 'what' as a pronoun ('what things') and as adjective 'which' ('which book' or 'what a nice man')

برای من چی آوردی؟ What have you brought for me?

مریم به تو چی (چه) گفت؟ What did Maryam tell you?

(c) **کدام** 'which one', pronoun (note it is not 'which book' or 'which teachers'; that would make it an interrogative adjective):

از این دو کتاب کدام را می خواهند؟ Which one of these two books do they want?

Interrogative adverbs

The following are some common adverbial question words or interrogative adverbs:

(a) **کجا** 'where', adverb of place.

دیروز کجا بودی؟ Where were you yesterday?

(b) **کی** 'when', also **چه وقت**, **چه موقع**.

(c) **چرا** 'why', also **برای چی** or **برای چه**.

(d) **چطور** 'how', also **چگونه**.

(e) **چقدر** 'how much', **چند تا** 'how many'.

Use of **مال**, 'property' to show ownership

To express possession in Persian and to distinguish between ‘this is my book’ and ‘this book is mine’, you place the noun مال *māl*, lit. ‘property’ after the possessed and before the possessor. Note that the word مال is linked by an *ezafe* to the possessor but is not vocally linked to the possessed:

آن خانه مال من است. That house is mine. (lit. my property)

این کتابها مال آنهاست. These books are mine.

آن دو صندلی مال این اتاق است ولی این میز چوبی مال آن اتاق است.

Those two chairs belong to this room but this wooden table belongs to that room.

Note: You can introduce a question without using any of the interrogative words but instead using the particle آیا (*ā yā*). This is usually done in written Persian:

آیا این کتاب مال شماست؟ *āyā in ketāb māl-e shomāst?*

Is this book yours?

آیا آن پالتو گران است؟ *āyā ān pālto gerān ast?*

Is that coat expensive?’

In spoken Persian, questions that do not contain an interrogative word are usually indicated by a rising intonation at the end of the sentence, rather than the use of آیا.

Insight

Persian has two different ‘yes’ responses depending on whether the affirmative answer is to a positive or negative questions. Just like in French where you use ‘oui’ or ‘si’, in Persian too, if you want to say ‘yes’ to a positive question you use *bale* **بله** or the informal *āreh* **آره**, or use *cherā* **چرا** if you want to give a positive answer to a negative question. *cherā* also means ‘why’ in another incarnation.

Answers to questions

Both **چرا** *cherā* and **بله** *bale* mean ‘yes’, but the difference between them is that *bale* is the positive answer to a positive (affirmative) question. For example, if the answer to ‘Is your brother here?’ is positive then we must use **بله** *bale* as the answer:

آیا برادرت اینجاست؟ بله، اینجاست.

But if the question is negative and the answer is positive then **چرا** *cherā* must be used:

برادرت اینجا نیست؟

چرا، اینجاست. Yes, he is here.

Exercise 1

Translate the following dialogue into English:

م این عینک مال کیست؟
 د کدام عینک؟
 م این عینک آفتابی. مال توست داریوش؟
 د نه، این عینک مال من نیست، مال امیر است. این کتابها
 و این کلید مال کیست؟
 م کتابها مال برادرم است و کلید مال من است.

د برادرت امروز کجاست؟ چرا اینجا نیست؟
 م امروز برادرم در خانه رضاست.
 د رضا کیست؟
 م رضا همکار برادرم است. رضا عکاس است.
 د آیا برادر تو هم عکاس است؟
 م نه، برادرم طراح گرافیک است.

Unit 7, Exercise 2 (2:27)

Exercise 2

Give your own answers to the following questions in Persian:

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ۱ اسم شما چیست؟ | ۶ شما کجا به دنیا آمدید؟ |
| ۲ اسم فامیل شما چیست؟ | ۷ شما روزها چکار می کنید؟ |
| ۳ خانه شما کجاست؟ | ۸ آیا دانشجو هستید؟ |
| ۴ اسم مادر و پدر شما چیست؟ | ۹ آیا خواهر یا برادر دارید؟ |
| ۵ تولد شما کی است؟ | ۱۰ ساعت الان چند است؟ |

There is no exact equivalent of 'mine' or 'yours' in Persian so, for example, to say 'this book is mine' you have to say 'this book belongs to me' using the word *māl*.

Reply to the following question:

- 1 What are the two most common letters found in almost all Persian question words?
- 2 Can you think of three Persian interrogatives (that is question words)?
- 3 Do Persian question words always start the sentence?

- 4** Does Persian have a mechanism for expressing the notion of possession such as 'mine', 'yours'?
- 5** When do we use 'Āyā' in Persian?
- 6** What would be the positive answer to a negative question?

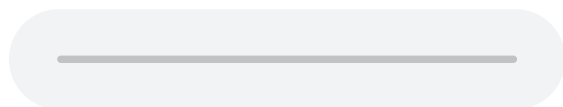


Likes and dislikes

In this unit you will learn how to

- *Use the verb 'to have' (past and present)*
 - *Say some more about yourself*
 - *Talk about your likes and dislikes*
-

Dialogue



Unit 8, Dialogue 1 (2:34)

Listen to Maryam and Dariush tell us more about themselves and talk to each other about some likes and dislikes:

م من یک خواهر و یک برادر دارم. برادر من کوچکتر و خواهرم بزرگتر است. اسم برادر کوچکتر من رضاست. اسم خواهرم نسرین است. من در بچگی یک گربه سفید داشتم و برادرم یک خرگوش سیاه دارد. خواهرم، نسرین، حیوان در خانه دوست ندارد. پدرم دندانساز است و مادرم نقاش است. ما یک خانه قشنگ در مرکز شهر داریم. پدر و مادرم خیلی دوست و آشنا دارند. داریوش تو چند تا خواهر و برادر داری؟

د من خواهر ندارم و فقط یک برادر دارم. نام برادر من آردشیر است. من دوست خیلی زیاد دارم. خانه من بیرون از شهر است. من و برادرم یک اسب داریم. اسم اسب ما رخس است. در هفته من خیلی کار دارم و برای سواری وقت ندارم. من در مدرسه چند تا دوست خارجی داشتم: دو پسر فرانسوی، یک آمریکایی و یک دختر مصری. من و آن دختر مصری و پسر آمریکایی دوچرخه داشتیم ولی آن دو پسر فرانسوی دوچرخه نداشتند.

م داریوش تو غذای فرانسوی دوست داری؟

د بله، من غذای فرانسوی دوست دارم، ولی غذای ایرانی و لبنانی بیشتر دوست دارم. تو چطور؟

م من هم غذای ایرانی خیلی دوست دارم. ولی خواهرم غذای ژاپنی دوست دارد. تو موسیقی، فیلم و ورزش دوست داری؟

د من موسیقی جاز، پاپ و کلاسیک دوست دارم. برادرم فوتبال و بسکتبال دوست دارد و من خیلی تنیس دوست دارم. ما، هر دو، فیلم پلیسی خیلی دوست داریم.



Design on large metal dish, 12th–13th century

- M** I have a brother and a sister. My brother is younger and my sister is older. My younger brother's name is Reza. My sister's name is Nasrin. I had a white cat in childhood and my brother has a black rabbit.
My sister, Nasrin, does not like animals in the house. My father is a dentist and my mother is a painter. We have a nice house in the centre of the city. My mother and father have many friends and acquaintances. Dariush, how many brothers and sisters do you have?
- D** I don't have sisters and only have a brother. My brother's name is Ardeshir. I have very many friends. My house is outside the city. My brother and I have a horse. The name of our horse is 'Rakhsh'. I am very busy during the week and have no time for riding. I had several foreign friends at school: two French boys, one American and an Egyptian girl. The Egyptian girl, the American boy and myself had bicycles, but the two French boys did not have a bike.
- M** Dariush, do you like French food?
- D** Yes, I like French food, but I like Persian and Lebanese food more. How about you?
- M** I also very much like Persian food. However, my sister likes Japanese food. Do you like music, films and sports?
- D** I like jazz, pop and classical music. My brother likes football and basketball and I really like tennis. We both really like detective films.

Quick Vocab

khāhar	<i>sister</i>	خواهر
barādar	<i>brother</i>	برادر
kuchaktar	<i>smaller, younger</i>	کوچکتر
bozorg-tar	<i>bigger, older</i>	بزرگتر
Rezā	boy's name	رضا
Nasrīn	girl's name	نسرین
bachegī	<i>childhood</i>	بچگی
gorbe	<i>cat</i>	گربه
sefid	<i>white</i>	سفید
dāshtam	<i>I had</i>	داشتم
khargush	<i>rabbit</i>	خرگوش
siyāh	<i>black</i>	سیاه

dārad	<i>he, she has</i>	دارد
khāharam	<i>my sister</i>	خواهرم
heyvān	<i>animal</i>	حیوان
dar	<i>in</i>	در
khāne	<i>house, home</i>	خانه
dust	<i>usually friend, here, liking</i>	دوست
-na	<i>negative marker</i>	نه
na-dārad	<i>does not have</i>	ندارد
dandānsāz	<i>dentist</i>	دندانساز
naqqāsh	<i>painter</i>	نقاش
markaz	<i>centre</i>	مرکز
shahr	<i>city</i>	شهر
dārim	<i>we have</i>	داریم
kheyli	<i>very, much</i>	خیلی
dust	<i>friend</i>	دوست
va	<i>and</i>	و
āshnā	<i>acquaintance</i>	آشنا
dārand	<i>they have</i>	دارند
chand tā	<i>(as question) how many?</i>	چند تا
dāri	<i>you have</i>	داری
na-dāram	<i>I don't have</i>	ندارم
faqat	<i>only</i>	فقط
Ardeshir	<i>boy's name</i>	آرديشير
kheyli ziyād	<i>very much</i>	خیلی زیاد
khāne-ye man	<i>my house (lit. house of mine)</i>	خانه من

birun	<i>outside</i>	بیرون
az	<i>of</i>	از
asb	<i>horse</i>	اسب
mā	<i>us</i>	ما
Rakhsh	<i>name of legendary horse</i>	رخش
hafte	<i>week</i>	هفته
kār	<i>jobs, work, things that keep one busy</i>	کار
kār drram	<i>I am busy</i>	کار دارم
barāy-e	<i>for</i>	برای
savāri	<i>riding</i>	سواری
vaqt	<i>time</i>	وقت
vaqt nadāram	<i>I don't have time</i>	وقت ندارم
madrese	<i>school</i>	مدرسه
chand tā	<i>several</i>	چند تا
khāreji	<i>foreign</i>	خارجی
dāshtam	<i>I had</i>	داشتم

To have

The verb ‘to have’ داشتن *dāshtan* is an irregular verb, more irregular than our standard irregular Persian verbs such as ‘to come’ آمدن *āmadan*, which we will look at in detail shortly, but not as irregular as the verb ‘to be’, discussed earlier.

The various forms of the verb ‘to have’ can be conjugated regularly but this verb does not take on any verbal prefixes such as the continuous prefix *-mi* می or the subjunctive prefix *-be* به that we will cover in later units.

This irregularity does not affect the formation of the simple past tense but, as with all other irregular Persian verbs, we need to know the present stem before we proceed to work out the various present tense forms of the verb. The present stem of the verb داشتن *dāsh-* can be found in the list of irregular stems provided in the appendix.

Insight

After the verb ‘to be’ the next verb that sometimes defies the straightforward rules of conjugation is the Persian verb ‘to have’. In its present tense it should not take the prefix *-mi* می. Nor should it take the *-mi* می with the habitual past tense. Having said that, some educated native speakers adopt this wrong use of the *-mi* prefix with the verb ‘to have’ making its erroneous use more common.

Present tense of داشتن ‘to have’

The present stem of داشتن is دار *dār*. However, the standard present tense formation formula (shown in full in Unit 13) cannot be applied to this verb in its entirety.

The irregular nature of ‘to have’ in Persian dictates that this verb does not take any prefixes in its present tense forms. Therefore the general formula which is: present tense = subject endings + present stem + می *-mi* has to be modified for the verb ‘to have’.

The modified formula is: present tense of داشتن = subject endings + دار *dār*.

The six forms of the present indicative of ‘to have’ are:

Singular	Plural
1 دارم <i>dāram</i> I have	داریم <i>dārim</i> we have
2 داری <i>dāri</i> you have	دارید <i>dārid</i> you (pl.) have
3 دارد <i>dārad</i> he, she, it has	دارند <i>dārand</i> they have

The negative present tenses of ‘to have’ are:

Singular	Plural
1 ندارم <i>nadāram</i> I do not have	نداریم <i>nadārim</i> we do not have
2 نداری <i>nadāri</i> you do not have	ندارید <i>nadārid</i> you (pl.) do not have
3 ندارد <i>nadārad</i> he, she, it does not have	ندارند <i>nadārand</i> they do not have

Exercise 1

Translate into Persian:

- 1 Maryam and Amir have a very nice, small house.
- 2 I don't like Japanese food, but like Lebanese food.
- 3 They have a lot of work tomorrow.
- 4 Do you have any friends in Paris?
- 5 My brother's wife has six uncles (maternal).

Exercise 2

Translate into English:

من یک کلبه کوچک در کوهستان نزدیک دریاچه مازندران دارم.
این کلبه نه برق دارد نه تلفن ولی منظره آن خیلی قشنگ است.
نزدیک کلبه یک چشمه آب است. این کلبه دو سه تا صندلی، یک
میز چوبی، یک تختخواب بزرگ، یک آشپزخانه کوچک و یک
بخاری دیواری دارد. این کلبه دور از شهر بهترین جا برای
استراحت است.

Past tense of داشتن

For the simple past we follow the standard formula that helps us form all past tense verbs: past tense = subject ending + past stem.

Subject endings are the same as the endings of all Persian verbs that tell you who the doer of the verb is. Their use is compulsory and without them the verb will be incomplete. They tell us exactly who the subject of any action is and therefore, unlike English, we do not need to use a subject pronoun in a Persian sentence. The subject pronouns were discussed in detail earlier in the book but the following table lists the verb ending for use in this unit.

Singular	Plural
1st ا م -am	we یم -im
2nd you ی -i	you ید -id
3rd s/he ر * no suffix for past tenses	they ند -and

* ر -ad is never used with the past tense verbs: this means that the third person singular of Persian past tense verbs does not have an attached subject marker or suffix.

The past stem of داشتن is formed by dropping the ان -an ending which leaves us with داشت *dāsht*.

The six forms of ‘to have’ in the simple past can be seen in the following table.

Singular	Plural
1 داشتم <i>dāsh tam</i> I had	داشتیم <i>dāsh tim</i> we had
2 داشتی <i>dāsh ti</i> you had	داشتید <i>dāsh tid</i> you (pl.) had
3 داشت <i>dāsh t</i> he, she, it had	داشتند <i>dāsh tand</i> they had

The six negative forms are shown in the following table.

Singular	Plural
1 نداشتم <i>nadāsh tam</i> I did not have	نداشتیم <i>nadāsh tim</i> we did not have
2 نداشتی <i>nadāsh ti</i> you did not have	نداشتید <i>nadāsh tid</i> you (pl.) did not have
3 نداشت <i>nadāsh t</i> he, she, it did not have	نداشتند <i>nadāsh tand</i> they did not have

Remember that there is no subject suffix (or ending) for the third person singular in *any* of the past tense verbs.

Exercise 3

Translate the following sentences into Persian:

- 1 We had two cars in Iran.
- 2 She had a horse, two cats, chickens and rabbits in her house in Turkey.
- 3 They had several friends in Tehran.
- 4 How much money did you have yesterday?
- 5 I did not have a television but had an old radio.

Exercise 4

Supply an appropriate past tense form of the verb to have or the correct subject pronoun:

۱ من در ایران چند دوست ایتالیایی _____.

۲ _____ در آن شهر خیلی دوست و آشنا داشتید؟

۳ _____ روز سه شنبه خیلی کار داشت.

۴ ما سه روز برای کار در لندن بودیم ولی برای گردش وقت _____.

۵ آنها چقدر پولِ یورو» _____؟

Insight

An indefinite noun, that is a non-specific noun can be plural or singular, such as ‘there is **a book** here, whose is it’ or ‘would you like **an apple** if you are hungry’ or ‘there are **some students** in this class who travel every weekend’ is marked by an ‘-i’ ‘ی’ ending in Persian. This suffix can be attached to either singular or plural nouns.

Advanced use of present and past forms of ‘to have’

In more advanced use of language, the verb ‘to have’, in both present and past tenses, is also used as an auxiliary verb, expressing the sense of progression of an action, i.e. that an action is taking place right now or will take place imminently, or that it was taking place when it was superseded or interrupted by another action.

In the present tense

For example, someone is telling you to ‘Hurry up and get going’. The response might be:

دارم می آیم. I am coming!

Or someone asks, ‘What is Ali doing just now?’ The reply:

علی دارد کتاب می خواند. Ali is reading his book (right now).

In the past tense

‘What were you doing when I called last night?’:

داشتم تلویزیون تماشا می کردم. I was watching television.

داشتم از در بیرون می رفتم که تلفن زنگ زد. I was about to leave when the phone rang. (*lit.* leaving through the door)

The indefinite: ‘a’ or ‘one’ added to nouns, ‘some’

The status of a noun in Persian is not exactly the same as it is in English and the ideas of 'definite' or 'indefinite' do not correspond exactly to what we understand by these terms in English.

The Persian noun appears instead in two ways, the 'absolute' and the 'non-specific'. What do we mean by these terms? The noun in its *absolute* state is a noun with no attachments, no suffix or any other 'bits' joined on to it. It is the word as found in a dictionary. Such a noun can indicate both a very specific singular word and the generic. In English, the generic, which is the general term for something or a group of things, is

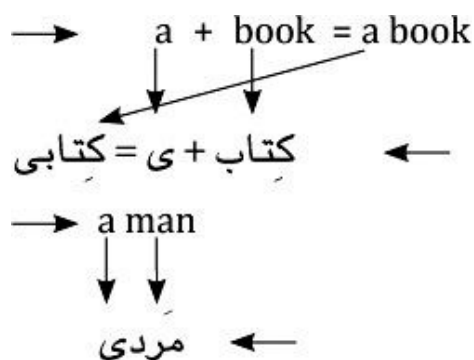
usually rendered by the plural. For example, گل *gol* flower means both 'the flower', about which we know something already, and 'flowers' in general, as in 'I like to have flowers in the house'.

How do you render the sense of 'a house', 'a book' or 'a car' in Persian, that is, how do you form the *non-specific* also known as the *indefinite* in Persian?

Broadly speaking, a noun becomes *indefinite*, or *non-specific*, in Persian through the addition of the suffix (or attachment) ی *i* to its pure form as found in a dictionary.

indefinite = ی + noun

This is, of course, not at all dissimilar to the way in which a non-specific English noun is formed, except the 'a' is not attached the English word; the ی is joined onto the Persian word if possible: 'a book', simply means any old book, as in 'I found a book on the shelf' not a particular, specific book:



The indefinite is expressed in three ways in Persian:

- 1 by adding an ی to the end of the noun as just demonstrated
- 2 by putting the word 'one'/'a', یک *yek*, before the definite noun
- 3 by using both یک and ی (the most common spoken form).

Look at these examples:

a book *ketābi* کتابی = ی + (book) کتاب

a/one book *yek ketāb* یک کتاب = کتاب + (one) یک

a book *yek ketābi* یک کتابی = یک + کتاب + ی

If two or more nouns are joined by the ‘co-ordinate’ **و** *va* and are all non-specific (indefinite), the indefinite marker **ی** *i* is added to the final one only, the group being regarded as a whole:

کتاب و مداد (pencil) و قلم (pen) و خودکاری (biro)

The **ی** *i* is only added to the last word in the group, which is **خودکار** *khodkār* biro.

Writing rules

That’s all there is to the formation of non-specific words in Persian! Before we move on, however, we must look at how to add an **ی** *i* to the end of a word that already ends with a vowel; words such as **آقا** *āqā* ‘gentleman’; **بو** *bu* ‘smell’; **سینی** *sini* ‘tray’; and **خانه** *khāne* ‘house’.

If the noun ends with a final, short vowel or the ‘silent’ *he*, the indefinite **ی** is spelt with an *alef* + **ی** i.e. **ای** (*ay*), that is still pronounced as *i*:

خانه + **ای** = **خانه ای** a house *khāne-i*

Care must be taken to distinguish between the final, silent *he*, which is simply an indicator of the presence of a final short *e* vowel, and the real letter *he*, which is a true consonant and therefore the indefinite article **ی** can join onto it directly:

خانه ای a house *khāne-i*

بچه ای a child *bache-i*

میوه ای a (piece of) fruit *mive-i*

As opposed to words that end in the letter **ه/ه** *h*:

کوهی a mountain *kuhi*

ماهی a moon *māhi*

راهی a path or road *rāhi*

Similarly, if a word ends in the long vowel **ی** *i*, e.g. **صندلی** *sandali* ‘chair’ or **طوطی** *tuti* ‘parrot’, the indefinite ending will be **ای** *i*:

a chair *sandali-i* **صندلی ای** = a **ی** (ا) + chair *sandali* ا

Other vowel endings

If the word ends in either an **ا** *ā* such as **آقا** *āqā* ‘gentleman’ or **و** *u* as in **مو** *mu* ‘hair’, the **ی** of the indefinite marker is simply doubled to compensate for two vowels coming together:

a gentleman *āqā-i* **آقای** = **ی** (a, one) **ی** + gentleman *āqā* **آقا**

a hair *mu-i* **مویی** = **ی** (a, one) **ی** + hair *mu* **مو**

An alternative to doubling the **ی** of the indefinite marker is inserting a *hamze* over a bearer (ئ) between the final long vowels **ا** *ā* and **و** *u* and the indefinite article **ی**:

a foot *pā-i* **پایی** or **پائی** ← **پا**

a hair *mu-i* **مویی** or **موئی** ← **مو**

Writing rules at a glance

Example	Indefinite ending	Example	Vowel ending word
صندلی ای	ای	صندلی ای	ی
خانه ای - میوه ای	ای	خانه - میوه	ه - ه
مویی	یی	مو	و
آقای	یی	آقا	ا

The indefinite marker **ی** *i* can accompany a plural as well as a singular word and the plural, non-specific noun will be translated as ‘some’ instead of ‘a’ or ‘one’:

some books *ketābhā-i* **کتابهایی**

some cities *shahrhā-i* **شهرهایی**

If the most common form of Persian plural, i.e. **ها** *hā*, is used then the plural of all nouns formed in this way will inevitably end with the long vowel **ا** *ā* and the indefinite of all plurals made this way will always be **هایی** or **هائی**, that is the **ی** will be doubled. For example:

some books **کتابهائی** or **کتابهایی**

some girls **دُخترهایی**

some flower pots or vases **گلدانهای** or **گلدانهای**

Exercise 5

Form the indefinite of the following:

پَرَنده	شَب	کِشور
اُسْتاد	صُبْح	مِيز
مَرَد	هَفْتِه	کوه
همسايه	اَقا	کِتَاب
خوابگاه	پا	دوستان
شهر	راه	صَنَدَلِي
اَسبها	ماهی	دَر
خانه	سِتاره	روز

Exercise 6

Translate the following into Persian:

a man a house some boys
a cat a star a flower
some cities some fruits a child



Grammar reference unit

Time for another pause to look at some more grammatical terminology before we start learning proper verbs and all the different tenses that we need.

Verbs

Verbs are words or phrases that express what someone or something is doing or feeling, or the state somebody or something is in or is becoming. In many Indo-European languages, verbs can be grouped together according to the way they behave or conjugate. In some languages, and English is an example, verb conjugation is very simple. For example, the verb 'to cost' possesses only three forms: 'cost', 'costs' and 'costing'. (Similarly the verb 'to cut'.)

Persian verbs are not as simple to conjugate as English verbs but compared with German or French, for example, they are still a lot easier to learn.

Persian has developed a very logical system for verb conjugation. There are very simple formulas that the learner can quickly grasp in order to arrive at the correct form of verbs for any sentence. However, like most other languages, Persian verbs are either regular or irregular. The irregularity of a Persian verb affects it only in the present tenses (as in 'I travel', 'you are going' or 'they want to sell'). Otherwise the formulas for conjugation of verbs are very straightforward.

Before we start on the verbs it is important to get used to certain terminology.

In many languages a verb consists of the following parts.

Infinitive

This is the form by which the verb is usually listed in dictionaries or is referred to. In English there is only one pattern for infinitives. It is always 'to read', 'to speak', 'to dance'. In Persian, as we shall see very soon, infinitives fall into three distinct patterns.

Root

This is the most basic form of the verb to which other prefixes or suffixes are added to form other parts. 'Do' is the root of 'to do' and '-ing' or '-es' can be added to create other forms of the same verb.

The Persian verb has two roots or *stems* as it is also sometimes called. I find it easier to think of the infinitive of the verb as an egg with the egg white and the egg yolk as its two roots or stems. Each can be separated from the whole and, by adding different ingredients to the roots, other forms of the verb can be made, in exactly the same way that mayonnaise or meringues can be made, starting with the base material of either an egg yolk or an egg white.

Mood

This is, if you like, how a verb expresses itself to tell us whether it is indicative, subjunctive, conditional or imperative (as in giving commands). For a culinary equivalent think of milk chocolate, plain chocolate, white chocolate and cooking chocolate as different moods of the same verb.

Indicative mood states a real action such as ‘I arrived yesterday’ or ‘I am writing a letter’.

Subjunctive is the mood for expression of the desired, the anticipated, the feared, the possible, obligatory, doubtful, implied or conditional action, e.g. ‘I hope to go to Iran in the summer’, ‘He may find a cheaper ticket’ or ‘They don’t want to leave London, but he has to find a new job’.

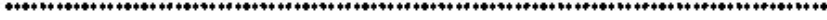
In other words, in opposition to the indicative, which is the mood of real action, the subjunctive is used in situations where the realization of the action is not considered as certain.

Tense

This is the form of the verb indicating the time of the action, as in past or present or future etc.: ‘I went to Canada last summer’, ‘They are sitting in the car’, ‘We will be in Europe next July’.

Insight

Don't forget the very important endings that tell you who is doing the action! Without them you won't know who is doing what. These endings are the short forms of the verb 'to be' in the present tense.

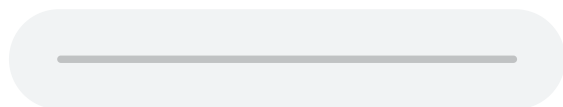


What are you learning?

In this unit you will learn how to

- *Use simple verbs*
 - *Form the simple past tense*
 - *Use different verbs for situations in the past*
-

Dialogue



Unit 10, Dialogue 1 (1:20)

Listen to the informal chat between two people finding out about what the other does. Listen closely to the verbs appearing at the end of each sentence:

- شما اینجا دانشگاه می روید؟
- بله، من دانشجو هستم.
- چه می خوانید؟
- زبان می خوانم.
- چه زبانی می خوانید؟
- زبان فارسی می خوانم. شما چه می خوانید؟
- من هم زبان می خوانم.
- شما چه زبانی می خوانید؟
- من فرانسه می خوانم.
- شما کجا فارسی یاد گرفتید؟
- در تهران فارسی یاد گرفتم.
- چند سال در تهران بودید؟
- سه سال آنجا بودم.
- کی به تهران رفتید؟
- هفت سال پیش به تهران رفتم.
- کی برگشتید؟
- چهار سال پیش برگشتم.
- در تهران چه می کردید؟ دانشجو بودید؟
- نه، دانشجو نبودم. کار می کردم.
- کجا کار می کردید؟
- در سفارت اسپانیا کار می کردم.
- تهران چطور بود؟
- تهران خیلی خوب بود ولی اصفهان بهتر بود. تهران خیلی شلوغ است و به قشنگی اصفهان هم نیست.

- Do you attend university here?
- Yes, I am a student.
- What do you study (*lit.* read)?
- I study languages.
- What language do you study?
- I study Persian. What do you read/study?
- I study languages too.
- What language do you study?
- I study French.
- Where did you learn Persian?
- I learnt Persian in Tehran.
- How many years were you in Tehran?
- I was there (for) three years.
- When did you go to Tehran?
- I went to Tehran seven years ago.
- When did you return?
- I came back four years ago.
- What did you do in Tehran? Were you (a) student?
- No, I was not (a) student. I was working.
- Where did you work?
- I worked in the Spanish Embassy.
- How was Tehran?
- Tehran was very good (nice), but Esfahan was better. Tehran is very busy and is not as beautiful as Esfahan.

Quick Vocab

dāneshgāh	university	دانشگاه
miravid	you go	می روید
dāneshju	student	دانشجو
hastam	I am	هستم
che?	what?	چه؟
mikhānid	you read	می خوانید
zabān	language	زبان
zabāni	a language	زبانی
mikhānam	I read	می خوانم
ham	also	هم
farānce	French	فرانسه
kojā?	where?	کجا؟
yād gereftid	you learnt	یاد گرفتید
yād gereftam	I learnt	یاد گرفتم
chand?	how many?	چند؟
sāl	year	سال
budid	you were	بودید
budam	I was	بودم

key?	when?	کی؟
be	to	به
raftid	you went	رفتید
sāl-e pish	year(s) ago	سال پیش
haft	seven	هفت
raftam	I went	رفتم
bargashtid	you returned	برگشتید
bargashtam	I returned	برگشتم
dar	in, at	در
che mikardid?	what did you do?	چه می کردید؟
nakheyr	polite no	نخیر
nabudam	I was not	نبودم
kār	work, job	کار
kār mikardam	I worked	کاری کردم
kār mikardid	you worked	کاری کردید
sefārat	embassy	سفارت
espānlā	Spain	اسپانیا
chetor?	how	چطور؟
chetor bud?	how was it?	چطور بود؟
kheyli khub	very good	خیلی خوب
vall	but, however	ولی
behtar	better	بهتر
sholugh	busy, crowded	شلوغ
ast	is	است
be qashanlgi	as pretty as	به قشنگی
nist	is not	نیست

The infinitive

All Persian verbs are derived from the infinitive root. In Persian dictionaries the verbs are listed in their infinitive form.

All Persian infinitives end in **ن** -an (as all German infinitives end in -en, e.g. *spielen*). For example:

رَفْتَنَ *raftan* to go آمَدَنَ *āmadan* to come
خَرِيدَنَ *kharidan* to buy نَشِستَنَ *neshastan* to sit
بَرَدَنَ *bordan* to win پَرِيدَنَ *paridan* to jump
پُخْتَنَ *pokhtan* to cook دَادَنَ *dādan* to give
دَوِيدَنَ *davidan* to run

If you look more closely, however, you will see that Persian infinitives actually have three distinct endings

which are: تَنَ -*tan*, دَنَ -*dan* and یدَنَ -*idan*.

Insight

Delete all the '-an' endings of Persian infinitives and what you are left with is your past stem. Plug this information into the various formulas for making past tenses and you get the verbal form you need.

Verb formation

Simple past

Stage I

By far the easiest Persian verbs to form are the past tense verbs, that is verbs referring to actions that happened in the past. The main component that will enable you to form Persian past tense verbs is the past stem. The past stem, also known as the short infinitive, is made by simply dropping the ن -an ending of the infinitive.

For example, the past stem (or short infinitive) of the preceding examples, after dropping the ن -an, will be:

Infinitive Past stem (short infinitive)

رَفْتَن	→	رَفْت	<i>raft</i>
نِشَسْتَن	→	نِشَسْت	<i>neshast</i>
پُخْتَن	→	پُخْت	<i>pokht</i>
آمَدَن	→	آمَد	<i>āmad</i>
بُرَدَن	→	بُرَد	<i>bord</i>
دَادَن	→	دَاد	<i>dād</i>
خَرِيدَن	→	خَرِيد	<i>kharid</i>
پَرِيدَن	→	پَرِيد	<i>parid</i>
گُفْتَن	→	گُفْت	<i>goft</i>

Look closely at these short infinitives. Can you work out their common features? Look even closer. What are the endings of the past stems given here as examples in the right-hand column? It should be fairly obvious that all Persian past stems end in either **ت** *t* or **د** *d*.

The past stem in Persian has another special feature. It is identical to the third person singular past tense of that verb, i.e. the same as an action done by the doer in the simple past. So just by using the past stem on its own you can convey a very simple, but perfectly accurate, idea in Persian, such as 'Maryam went', 'he jumped', 'Darius said' and 'she arrived'. Bearing in mind that, in Persian word order, the verb always comes at the end of the sentence, and that there is no gender ('he' or 'she' is always **او**) these four short sentences can be translated as:

Maryam went. **مریم رفت.**
He jumped. **او پرید.**
Darius said. **داریوش گفت.**
She arrived. **او آمد.**

How about using the following combinations as subjects (that is the agents or doers) of the verb to form your own sentences using those same verbs: 'my mother', 'his younger brother', 'our guest' and 'her Iranian friend'? These are all third person, singular subjects. Your sentences should look like these:

My mother went. **مادرَم رفت.**
His younger brother jumped. **برادرِ کوچکش پرید.**
Our guest said ... **مهمانِ ما گفت ...**
Her Iranian friend arrived. **دوستِ ایرانیش آمد.**

As you can see, even before learning to form the Persian verbs in full you can easily create short sentences.

Insight

If you look up a verb in a Persian dictionary you'll find it in its infinitive form. Unlike English infinitives that appear in the uniform pattern of 'to go', 'to eat' or 'to buy', for example, the Persian infinitives have three distinct endings of '-tan', '-dan' or '-idan'; basically they all end in '-an', a little like the German infinitive that all end in '-en'.

Stage II

Apart from the past stem, which is the main component of past tense verbs, we need another ingredient before we construct a Persian verb referring to an action done in the past. This crucial ingredient is the subject verb ending, which is an essential part of the Persian verb. The English verb, on its own, does not tell us who the agent is. We say: 'I went', 'you went', 'we went', 'they went', 'she went' and so on. It is therefore crucial that a proper name or a pronoun or noun is used in the English sentence to indicate who the doer of the action is. In Persian however, the doer of the verb must be clearly represented in the structure of the verb, which means a suffix is attached as a verb ending. This will show us who the subject is.

The good news is that you will only have to learn these endings once. Incidentally, once we reach the unit on present tense verbs you will see that, with one small exception, the same endings are used for present tenses too.

The following table shows you the subject of the verb in the endings or suffixes in Persian and demonstrates to which pronoun or person they correspond:

Singular	Plural
1st ا -am	we يم -im
2nd you ی -i	you يد -id
3rd s/he no suffix	they ند -and

Conjugation, or verb formation, in Persian is so regular that you can actually use a simple formula to construct almost all the verbs of your choice.

The formula for simple past tense in Persian is: simple past = past stem + personal endings.

Let us start with one of the simplest examples and work our way through. How would you say 'I went' in Persian?

To begin with, let us find what the *infinitive* of the verb 'to go' is in Persian. The vocabulary at the back of the book or any good dictionary should tell you that 'to go' in Persian is: رفتن *raftan*. Remember, though, that in the dictionary you look up 'go' and not 'to go'.

Can you extract the past stem from the infinitive **رَفْتَن**? All you have to do is drop the **ن** -n from the ending:
رَفْتَن → **رَفْت** *raft*.

Next, look for the verb ending that corresponds to 'I', which the table should give you as: **م** -am. Now put these ingredients in our simple past formula: 'I went' = **م** + **رَفْت** = **رَفْتَم** *raftam*.

How about 'you went'? Again as in the above example, find the corresponding subject ending for 'you' singular which is **ی** -i, therefore: 'you went' = **ی** + **رَفْت** = **رَفْتِی** *rafti*.

Now try 'she went' in Persian. What is the subject ending for third person singular that corresponds to 'he' or 'she'? The table will show you that there is no ending for the third person singular subject. So our formula will look like this: 'she went' = **-** + **رَفْت** = **رَفْت** *raft*.

Reminder: The third person singular of any Persian verb referring to the simple past is exactly the same as the past stem of that verb.

Note: As Persian verbs always contain an ending which tells us who the subject is, there is rarely any need to use a subject pronoun in the sentence. For example, to translate the sentence 'we arrived', it is enough to say

آمَدیم *āmadim*, and it is not necessary to translate the 'we' as well, since the ending **یم** *im*, already indicates who is the agent of the verb 'to arrive'. However, subject pronouns are used for extra emphasis, for example, if we want to stress the fact that it was *we* who arrived and not another group then the sentence can be

translated as **ما آمَدیم** *mā āmadim*.

Exercise 1

Complete the following sentences using the appropriate subject verb endings.

- ۱ شما به خانه علی رفت...
 - ۲ آنها، صُبح به بازار رفت...
 - ۳ ما دیروز در یک چلوکبابی ناهار خورد...
 - ۴ تو کی به لندن آمد...؟
 - ۵ دیشب برادرِ تو را در سینما دید...
 - ۶ مریم و بابک در کتابخانه بود...
 - ۷ من دیروز در خانه ماند...
 - ۸ من و برادرم یک گریه سفید داشت...
 - ۹ دیشب هوا سرد بود...
 - ۱۰ شما چند روز پیش به تهران رسید...؟
-

Insight

Remember that there is no subject ending for an action done by he/she or it, in the simple and habitual past. The 3rd person singular doer of a verb is conspicuous by the absence of a subject indicator. He/she or it are not represented by a suffix stuck to the end of the verb in these two types of past tense verbs.

Exercise 2

Unit 10 Exercise 2 (1:05)

Translate the following sentences into Persian:

- 1 She came to our house last night.
- 2 I was in Shiraz for three years.
- 3 We arrived in London two days ago.
- 4 Maryam and Ali saw a very good film on Saturday.
- 5 Did you (sing.) buy anything in the market this morning?



Abu Reyhan Biruni, 11th-century mathematician, Lalleh Park, Tehran

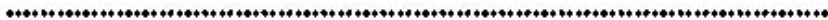
Things to remember

- Persian verbs have three distinct endings, ‘-tan’, ‘-dan’ and ‘-idan’, from which you can extract two vital bits of information to form your various verbs such as ‘I went’ or ‘she goes’ or ‘they used to buy’. These two vital ingredients are your past stems and present stems.
- The simplest Persian verb form is the simple past tense such as ‘**we went** to a museum in Tehran’ or ‘**I bought** a nice rug yesterday’. This is made by using the formula (going from right to left): subject ending + past stem (that is the infinitive without -an).
←
- The subject endings are:

م -im	م -am
د -id	ی -i
ند -and	**no suffix

Reply to the following questions.

- 1 What information can a Persian infinitive give the learner?
- 2 What are the common Persian infinitive endings?
- 3 What is the simplest Persian verb form to make?
- 4 How do we know who is the subject (the doer) of the Persian verb?
- 5 The short infinitive or the past stem is identical to what?



How did you get here so quickly?

In this unit you will learn how to

- Describe how things happened or were done
 - Describe where things happened or were done
 - Describe in what manner things happened or were done
-

Adverbs

What are adverbs? Adverbs are words that affect the meaning of a verb, an adjective or another adverb and are mainly used to nuance the action of verbs, for example, in the sentences 'she ran quickly' or 'you spoke beautifully', the words 'quickly' and 'beautifully' are adverbs, giving more information about the verbs 'ran' and 'spoke' respectively.

An adverb can also affect an adjective as in: 'I saw a very pretty bird'. Here the adverb 'very' intensifies the meaning of the adjective 'pretty'.

And finally, an adverb can add more emphasis to another adverb, as in 'he walks very quickly'. Here 'very' emphasizes the sense of 'quickly', itself an adverb describing the state of the verb 'walk'.

Before we look at some examples of common Persian adverbs I must remind you that in Persian, adverbs and adjectives often look the same. For example the word 'pretty' can mean both 'beautiful' or 'beautifully' depending on what part of the sentence it is used to describe:

نامهٔ قشنگِ شما رسید. Your beautiful letter arrived.

شما قشنگ می نویسید. You write beautifully.

In the first sentence, the word **قشنگ** *qashang* means 'pretty' and is an *adjective* for 'letter', but, in the second sentence, **قشنگ** means 'beautifully' and is an *adverb* for the verb 'you write'.

However, some adverbs, such as 'never' **هرگز**, 'now' **الآن - اکنون**, 'still' **هنوز**, 'suddenly' **ناگهان**, 'usually' **معمولاً**, 'very' **خیلی** and so on, only ever act as adverbs and cannot be used as adjectives.

Adverbs of time

Some common adverbs of time are:

today	امروز
tonight	امشب
tomorrow	فردا
yesterday	دیروز
last night	دیشب
this year	امسال
now	اکنون
never	هرگز
always	همیشه
sometimes	گاهی
often	اغلب
later	بعداً

Adverbs of place

Any word that tells us *where* an action is taking place but here are some general adverbs of place:

there	آنجا
here	اینجا
up	بالا
down	پایین
front	جلو
back	عقب
outside	بیرون - خارج
inside	درون - داخل

Adverbs of manner

For sequence

first, second, fourth, tenth, etc.	أول، دوم، چهارم، دهم
then	سپس
time to time	دَمَادَم
then	پس
one after the other	پشتِ سرِ هم
continuously	پیایی
one by one	یکی یکی

For quantity

little	کم
much, very	زیاد
many, much, very	بسیار
much, very	خیلی
little, a bit	اند
a bit, just a little, a touch	خُرده

Many adjectives such as 'fast', 'slow', 'pretty', 'ugly', 'good', 'bad' and so on can be used as adverbs. These phrases can be used similarly (and some can double as adjectives):

friendly	دوستانه
luckily, fortunately	خوشبختانه
unfortunately	بدبختانه
gradually, 'slowly, slowly', 'calmly, calmly'	آرام آرام
fast, quick (as adj.), fast, quickly (as adv.)	تند
with enmity, angrily	خصمانه
smilingly, cheerfully	خندان
in tears, tearfully	گریان
with difficulty	به دشواری
by force, forcibly, grudgingly	به زور - به زحمت
on foot	پیاده
with hesitation, reluctantly	با تردید

Tools, equipment, modes of transport, etc., can also be used as adverbs. These are often used in conjunction with the preposition **با** meaning 'by' or 'with':

by air, by aeroplane	با هواپیما
with the hammer	با چکش
with a biro, pen	با خودکار
by ship	با کشتی

Exercise 1

- 1 We ate our food very quickly.
- 2 They often wrote nice thank you letters.
- 3 Luckily, she was a very friendly neighbour.
- 4 I always saw Maryam in the mornings.
- 5 He usually lived in that big house with his family.
- 6 We went to Shiraz last month but unfortunately the weather was not good.
- 7 Maria dances beautifully.
- 8 They spoke slowly and we understood well.
- 9 Did you call them immediately?
- 10 Fortunately, I had an umbrella.

Exercise 2

Identify the adverbs in the sentences that follow and then translate the sentences into English:

- ۱ ناگهان ساعت سه صبح بیدار شدم و آهسته از اتاق بیرون آمدم.
- ۲ او خیلی نگران بود.
- ۳ خوشبختانه زود به فرودگاه رسیدند.
- ۴ او هنوز در لندن است.
- ۵ ما دیشب خیلی دیر به خانه آمدیم.
- ۶ شما فقط ده دلار دارید؟
- ۷ من غذای ایرانی دوست دارم، مخصوصاً باقالی پلو.
- ۸ آنوقت شب همه رستوران ها بسته بودند.
- ۹ نامه تو اقلأ سه روز پیش رسید.
- ۱۰ خانه ما به پارک نزدیک است.



Have you seen Mina's new house?

In this unit you will learn how to

- *Recognize and form other verb forms*
- *Use 'but'*
- *Use 'other' with negative verbs*

Dialogue

Unit 12, Dialogue 1 (2:22)

Listen to Maryam and Amir talking about their friends' living arrangements.

م	امیر خانه جدید مینا را دیده ای؟
آ	نه، خانه جدید او را ندیده ام. مگر او با یاسمن و پری زندگی نمی کرد؟
م	نه مینا دیگر در آن خانه نیست. یاسمن برای یکسال به آلمان رفته است و پری پیش خانواده اش برگشته است.
آ	پس مینا حالا کجاست؟
م	او یک اتاق در یک خانه نو پیدا کرده است.
آ	این خانه مال کیست؟

- م خانۀ مالِ خالۀ یکی از دوستانِ میناست. ولی صاحبخانۀ و شوهرش در انگلستان زندگی می‌کنند و خانۀ را اجاره داده‌اند.
- ا تو این خانۀ را دیده‌ای؟
- م وقتی بچه بودم و به مدرسۀ می‌رفتم، هرروز از جلوی این خانۀ می‌گذشتم، چون این خانۀ و مدرسۀ ام هر دو در یک خیابان بود. داریوش و خواهرش چند هفته پیش با مینا به یک مهمانی در آن خانۀ رفته بودند.
- ا این خانۀ کجاست و چند تا اتاق دارد؟
- م در خیابانِ فردوسی است.
- ا کجای خیابانِ فردوسی؟ عموی من هم تا پارسال در خیابانِ فردوسی زندگی می‌کرد.
- م نزدیک سینما شهر فرنگ، درست یک کوچۀ بالاتر از پیتزا پاتوق. پلاک ۱۹۸ خیابانِ فردوسی.
- ا این خانۀ باغ هم دارد؟
- م یک باغچۀ کوچولو دارد، ولی خیلی تمیز و جا دار است. سه تا اتاق خوابِ بزرگ، دو تا حمام، یک سالن و آشپزخانۀ بزرگ و مجهز.
- ا به! به! پس امیدوارم که مینا هرچۀ زودتر یک مهمانی منزلِ مبارکی بدهد و ما را هم دعوت بکند!

M	Amir, have you seen Mina's new house?
A	No, I haven't seen her new house. Did she not use to live with Yasaman and Pari?
M	No, she is no longer in that house. Yasaman has gone to Germany for a year and Pari has returned to her family.
A	So where is Mina now?
M	She has found a room in a new house.
A	Whose house is this?
M	The house belongs to the (maternal) aunt of one of Mina's friends. However, the owner and her husband live in the UK and has rented out the house.
A	Have you seen this house?
M	When I was little and used to go to school, I would pass by this house every day, because this house and my school were in the same street. A few weeks ago, Dariush and his sister went to a party in that house with Mina.
A	Where is this house and how many rooms does it have?
M	It is in Ferdosi Avenue.
A	Whereabouts in Ferdosi Avenue? My (paternal) uncle used to live in Ferdosi Avenue until last year.
M	Near Shahr-e farang (<i>lit.</i> kaleidoscope) Cinema, exactly one side street up from Pizza Patoq (<i>lit.</i> pizza hang-out). Number 198 Ferdosi Avenue.
A	Does this house have a garden too?
M	It has a small flower garden/patio, but it's very clean and spacious: three large bedrooms, two bathrooms, one drawing room and a large, well-equipped kitchen.
A	Wow! I hope Mina gives a house-warming party very soon and invites us too!

Quick Vocab

<i>new</i>	جدید	<i>school</i>	مدرسه
<i>have you seen</i>	دیده ای	<i>I used to go</i>	می رفتم
<i>I have not seen</i>	ندیده ام	<i>in front of, by</i>	جلوی
<i>but...</i>	مگر	<i>I used to pass</i>	می گذشتم
<i>used not to live</i>	زندگی نمی کرد	<i>because</i>	چون
<i>with negative</i>	دیگر	<i>my school</i>	مدرسه ام
<i>verb no longer,</i>		<i>both of us</i>	هر دو
<i>no more</i>		<i>a few weeks ago</i>	چند هفته پیش
<i>one year</i>	یک سال	<i>party</i>	مهمانی
<i>Germany</i>	آلمان	<i>they had gone</i>	رفته بودند
<i>has gone</i>	رفته است	<i>where is it?</i>	کجاست؟

to (used for people)	پیش	how many?	چند تا
her family	خانواده اش	where in?	کجای؟
has returned	برگشته است	paternal uncle	عمو
now	حالا	until, up to	تا
room	اتاق	last year	پارسال
she has found	پیدا کرده است	used to live	زندگی می کرد
owner, landlord/ lady	صاحبخانه	near to	نزدیک
husband	شوهر	exactly	درست
her husband	شوهرش	side street	کوچه
they are living	زندگی می کنند	further up	بالتر
they have rented out	اجاره داده اند	lit. favourite meeting place where people hang out; here, a name	پاتوق
have you seen?	دیده ای؟	plaque, door number	پلاک
when, at the time that	وقتی	198	۱۹۸
I was a child	بچه بودم	well equipped	مجهز
garden	باغ	how lovely!	به! به!
small garden	باغچه	I hope	امیدوار
tiny, very small	کوچولو	as soon as possible	هرچه زودتر
clean	تمیز	house warming	منزل مبارکی
spacious	جادار	(subj.) that she gives	بدهد
bedroom	اتاق خواب	us too	ما را هم
bath, bathroom	حمام	(subj.) that she invites	دعوت بکند
lit. salon, hall, big room	سالن		
kitchen	آشپزخانه		

Many of the verbs used in the dialogue are not the simple past tense verbs that we have seen in the previous units. The verbs refer to actions that had, for example, happened at some point in the past and their effects are either still relevant (such as 'she has found a room') or no longer relevant (such as 'went to a party'). These verbs are discussed in detail later in this unit.

But before we look at the variation on the past tense verbs, let us look at two other important and useful points.

Use of 'but' مگر, a conjunction question word

When the questioner uses the question word *magar* مگر with a negative sentence, he or she expects the answer 'yes' and if مگر is used in a positive sentence it indicates that he or she expects the answer 'no'.

For example مگر in a negative question: مگر شما علی را نمی شناسید؟ 'But don't you know Ali?' means that the questioner really expects the addressee to know Ali and to answer 'yes'. The 'yes'

answer to these questions is not بله *bale*, but چرا *cherā*.

A positive sentence with مگر would be like this: مگر او خیلی پول دارد؟ 'but does he have a lot of money?' The answer to this is expected to be 'no'. 'No, he doesn't have much money'.

Use of دیگر with negative words

دیگر *digar* 'other' acts as an adjective when it qualifies a noun and means 'other' or sometimes 'more' if it is used with a positive verb, such as 'I want the other book' آن کتاب دیگر را می خواهیم or 'the other day' روز دیگر. However, if دیگر is used as an *adverb* with a *negative verb* it means 'no longer' or 'no more'.

دیگر به لندن نرفتند. They no longer went to London.

دیگر پول نداریم. We have no more money. We no longer have money.

Insight

Persian uses double negatives such as: 'I didn't see *no one* هیچکس' or 'they are not buying *nothing* هیچ چیز'.

Forming the past continuous

In order to form the other past tense verbs in Persian you simply need to expand on the 'formula' that we used for the simple past tense which is: simple past = subject ending + past stem.

The next tense formed from the past stem is the *imperfect* or the *past continuous*. This refers to habitual actions in the past, such as 'I used to live near a lake', as well as actions that continued over a period of time or were in progress at some moment in the past such as 'I was walking along the road'.

Imperfect or *past continuous* (also known as *habitual past* in some books) is formed by adding the suffix می *mi* to the simple past: past continuous/imperfect = simple past + می.

Compare the two tenses given in the following example:

Simple past	Imperfect
I came آمدَم <i>āmadam</i>	می آمدَم <i>mi āmadam</i> I used to come, was coming
you came آمدی <i>āmadi</i>	می آمدی <i>mi āmadi</i> you used to come, were coming
he, she, it came آمد <i>āmad</i>	می آمد <i>mi āmad</i> he, she, it used to come, was coming
we came آمدیم <i>āmadim</i>	می آمدیم <i>mi āmadim</i> we used to come, were coming
you (pl.) came آمدید <i>āmadid</i>	می آمدید <i>mi-āmadid</i> you (pl.) used to come, were coming
they came آمدند <i>āmadand</i>	می آمدند <i>mi āmadand</i> they used to come, were coming

Here are some examples in use:

مریم هر سه شنبه به کلاس نقاشی می رفت.

maryam har seshambe be kelās-e naqqāshi miraft.
Maryam used to go to painting class every Tuesday.

من تا سال ۱۳۷۲ در ایران زندگی می کردم. *man tā sāl-e hezār o sisado haftādo do*
dar irān zendegi mikardam. I used to live in Iran until 1372.

وقتی که جوان بودید تعطیلات کجا می رفتید؟

vaqtike javān budand ta'tilāt kojā miraftid?
Where did you use to go on holiday when you were young?

Note that the verbs 'to be' and 'to have' *do not* take the **می** *mi* prefix in the past continuous tense.

Insight

Adding a *mi* می to the simple past creates the imperfect or the English equivalent of *used to* ... e.g. 'I was going' or 'I used to go' is *mi-raftam* می رفتم.

Forming the perfect and pluperfect

The next group of verbs are compound forms that are made using the *past participle*, such as 'I have bought a very pretty hat' or 'I had seen that carpet in a shop in Kerman'. The first sentence refers to an action that was completed in the past while it maintains a link to the present time, i.e. the hat was purchased in the past tense but the sentence hints that the result of the purchase, i.e. the hat, is still very much around and part of the present time. The tense of the verb of this sentence is known as the *perfect tense*.

The second sentence, however, refers to an action that was achieved at a point in the remote past and maintained some relevance for a time but it no longer has any bearing on the present time. This tense is known as the *pluperfect*. It could be said that the pluperfect is the past tense of the perfect tense.

Formation of both of these compound tenses requires what is referred to as the *past participle*. The past participle is then placed in the appropriate formulas for the construction of the perfect and pluperfect tenses.

The past participle is very easily formed. All we need to do is add a final *ه/ه* *h* to the past stem, e.g. the verb 'to buy' is خریدن. The past stem of the verb, which if you recall is the same as the short infinitive, is formed by dropping the final *ن* *an*. Therefore the past stem of خریدن is خرید *kharid*. The past participle is then formed by adding a *ه/ه* *h* to this:

خرید = ه + خریده
kharide bought

رفت = ه + رفت
رفت = ه + رفت ← رفتن
rafte gone

دید = ه + دیده
دید = ه + دیده ← دیدن
dide seen

پیشرفت = ه + پیشرفت
پیشرفت = ه + پیشرفت ← پیشرفتن
pishrafte advanced, modern

Forming the perfect tense

The perfect (or *past narrative* tense as it is sometimes known) is formed by adding the short forms of the present tense of the verb ‘to be’ (those that are used after nouns ending in vowels) to the *past participle*:
perfect tense = short forms of the verb ‘to be’ + past participle.

The short forms of the verb ‘to be’ will act as the subject endings of the verb, telling us who is the agent of the action. Do you remember what these short forms of ‘to be’ are?

Singular	Plural
أَم <i>am</i> I am	ايم <i>im</i> we are
اى <i>i</i> you are	ايد <i>id</i> you (pl.) are
است <i>ast</i> he, she, it is	اند <i>and</i> they are

Using the formula we can work out what the Persian for ‘I have gone’ is:

‘to go’ = رَفْتَن → past stem = رَفْت
 ↓
 past participle = ه + رَفْت = رَفْتِه
 rafte-am آم رَفْتِه آم = آم + رَفْتِه ←

The six cases of the perfect tense of ‘to go’ are shown in the following table:

Singular	Plural
آم رَفْتِه I have gone	ايم رَفْتِه we have gone
اى رَفْتِه you have gone	ايد رَفْتِه you (pl.) have gone
است رَفْتِه he, she, it has gone	اند رَفْتِه they have gone

The negative of this tense is formed by prefixing *na* نـ to the participle: ‘you (pl.) have not gone’ =

نَرَفْتِه ايد , ‘I’ve not eaten’ = نَخورده ام , ‘you’ve not said’ = نَكفته اى

Uses of the perfect

The perfect tense expresses the present result of an action completed in the past:

مريم آمده است. Maryam has come. (i.e. she arrived, she is here)

آنها از منچستر آمده اند و امشب اینجا می مانند. They have arrived from Manchester and are spending the night here.

It can also indicate an action accomplished in an era considered as closed, for example talking about historical facts that are still relevant to today or speaking of long ago. In English, however, the simple past is the more commonly used tense for these instances:

کوروش پادشاه دادگری بوده است. Kurosh was a just king. (lit. has been a just king)

Forming the pluperfect

The pluperfect, also known as the *remote past*, is formed with the past participle followed by the simple past tense of the verb 'to be': pluperfect tense = simple past of 'to be' + past participle.

The six cases of the pluperfect of 'to buy' are shown in the following table:

Singular	Plural
خریده بودم I had bought	خریده بودیم we had bought
خریده بودی you had bought	خریده بودید you (pl.) had bought
خریده بود he, she, it had bought	خریده بودند they had bought

Uses of the pluperfect

The following examples demonstrate the use of the pluperfect in Persian:

وقتی رسیدم همه دوستانم رفته بودند. When I arrived all of my friends had gone.

این کتاب را سه سال پیش نوشته بود. She had written this book three years ago.

تا امروز او را ندیده بودیم. We had not seen him until today.

Note that in English the simple past may sometimes be used instead of the pluperfect.

Exercise 1

Translate the following into Persian:

- Maryam is asleep in that room. (Note: Persian uses 'has slept' for the English present.)
- We have never been (gone) to Iran.

- 3 You have lived in Africa before.
- 4 Their friends have arrived from Paris.
- 5 I have stayed in this small hotel.

Exercise 2

Translate into English:

- ۱ از دیروز تا حالا به اداره نیآمده است.
 - ۱ از صبح تا حالا در پارک بوده ام.
 - ۳ برای شام خوراک مرغ و سبزیجات پخته ایم.
 - ۴ چند سال در ایران زندگی کرده اید؟
 - ۵ آنها سه بار به اصفهان رفته اند.
-

Insight

Pluperfect tenses (as in: 'we had seen') are used more frequently in Persian compared to English. In English a simple past tense is used while Persian tends to use the pluperfect.

Exercise 3

Unit 12, Exercise 3 (2:07)

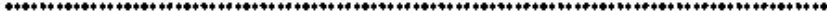
You have rung Ali at home to see if he is back from work as you wish to talk to him. Ali's wife, Nasrin, answers the phone. Can you follow the dialogue and provide the Persian translation of the English lines?

You	Hello. Mr Afshar's residence?
Nasrin	بله، بفرمایید.
You	Are you Miss Nasrin? I'm Pedram.
Nasrin	سلام پدرام خان، بله، نسرینم. حالتون چگونه؟ خوب هستید؟ خانم حالشان چگونه؟
You	I am very well, thank you. My wife is well too. She is in France at the moment. She is at her mother's.
Nasrin	برای چه مدت به فرانسه رفته اند؟
You	She has gone for a week. She hasn't seen her mother for four months. Her brother has also come over from the States too. The whole family are there now.
Nasrin	چه عالی. جای بقیه فامیل خالی.
You	Excuse me, is Ali at home?
Nasrin	بله، علی تازه از اداره آمده است. پس از من خداحافظ. سلام برسانید.
You	Bye for now, Miss Nasrin. Hope to see you soon.

Test yourself

1 What is the positive answer to a negative question sentence starting with 'magar' دیگر?

- 2 What does 'digar' **دیگر** mean when used with a negative verb?
- 3 Does Persian have double negatives?
- 4 How can you express the habitual action 'I used to ...' in Persian?
- 5 How is a Persian past participle formed?
- 6 Are the verb subject endings for present perfect the same as other past tense endings?
- 7 What are the endings for past or pluperfect tenses in Persian?
- 8 When is pluperfect used in Persian?
- 9 How do you form the negative of perfect tenses?
- 10 Conjugate the present and pluperfect of 'to find' **پیدا کردن**.



An invitation to supper

In this unit you will learn how to

- *Recognize and apply more verbs*
- *Form and use compound verbs*

Dialogue

Unit 13, Dialogue 1 (1:14)

Amir and Maryam talk about an invitation to supper at his house. Listen to the dialogue and pay special attention to the verbs:

م	امیر، دیروز کجا بودی؟
ا	دیروز صبح در مغازه کار می کردم. بعد ساعت چهار به کتابخانه رفتم و تا ساعت شش و نیم آنجا درس خواندم.
م	من، دیروز بعداز ظهر به منزلت تلفن زدم و با مادرت حرف زدم. مادرت، من و خانواده ام را به شام دعوت کرد.
ا	چه خوب. کی برای شام پیش ما می آیید؟
م	سه شنبه آینده می آییم. امیر مادرت چه گلی دوست دارد؟
ا	مادرم گل سرخ و لاله خیلی دوست دارد. وقتی در شیراز زندگی می کردیم باغ ما پر از گل بود.
م	بسیار خوب، پس من چند شاخه گل سرخ و یک جعبه شیرینی برای او می آورم.

M	Amir, where were you yesterday?
A	I was working in the shop yesterday morning. Then, at four o'clock I went to the library and studied there till 6.30.
M	I called your house yesterday afternoon and spoke to your mother. Your mother invited me and my family to supper.
A	How wonderful. When are you (pl.) coming to us for supper?
M	We are coming next Tuesday. Amir, what flowers does your mother like?
A	My mother likes red roses and tulips. When we lived in Shiraz our house was full of flowers.
M	OK, in that case I will bring her several stems of roses and a box of chocolates.

Quick Vocab

<i>yesterday</i>	دِیروز
<i>morning</i>	صَبیح
<i>shop</i>	مَغازه
<i>I was working</i>	کار می کردم
<i>then, next</i>	بَعْد
<i>four o'clock</i>	سَاعَتِ چَهار
<i>library</i>	کتابخانه
<i>until, up to</i>	تا
<i>6.30</i>	شِش و نِیم
<i>I studied</i>	دَرس خواندم
<i>afternoon</i>	بَعْدازظَهر
<i>your house</i>	مَنْزِلَت
<i>I telephoned</i>	تَلْفَن زدم
<i>your mother</i>	مادَرَت
<i>I spoke</i>	حَرف زدم

<i>my family</i>	خانواده ام
direct object marker	را
<i>to</i>	به
<i>supper, dinner</i>	شام
<i>she invited</i>	دعوت کرد
<i>when?</i>	کی؟
<i>for</i>	برای
<i>you (pl.) come</i>	می آید
<i>Tuesday</i>	سه شنبه
<i>future, next</i>	آینده
<i>we will come</i>	می آییم
<i>flower (arch. roses)</i>	گل
<i>a flower</i>	گلی
<i>she likes</i>	دوست دارد
<i>red, crimson</i>	سرخ
<i>tulips</i>	لاله
<i>when, at the time that</i>	وقتی
<i>we lived</i>	زندگی می کردیم
<i>garden</i>	باغ
<i>full of</i>	پراز
<i>then, in that</i>	پس
<i>several</i>	چند
<i>branch, stem</i>	شاخه
<i>box</i>	

confectionery
for her (or him)
I will bring

جعبه
شیرینی
برای او
می آورم

Compound verbs

The verbs کار کردم, 'I worked', درس خواندم, 'I studied', حرف زدم, 'I spoke or talked to', دعوت کرد, 'she invited', دوست دارد, 'she likes' and زندگی کردیم, 'we lived', used in the dialogue, are known as *compound verbs*. As you can see they contain a noun as well as the verb element. Compound verbs don't behave any differently from ordinary, single verbs. When we form the different tenses and persons of these verbs, we still only conjugate the verbal element and the noun component does not get changed in any way whatsoever. The infinitive of a compound verb can consist of a noun + verb or a preposition + verb as in the following examples:

Quick Vocab

زندگی کردن (زندگی + کردن)	<i>zendeḡi kardan</i>	to live
زندگی	<i>zendeḡi</i>	life
کردن	<i>kardan</i>	to do
درس خواندن (درس + خواندن)	<i>dars khāndan</i>	to study
درس	<i>dars</i>	lesson
خواندن	<i>khāndan</i>	to read
برگشتن (بر + گشتن)	<i>bar gashtan</i>	to return, to turn back
بر	<i>bar</i>	over, on, top
گشتن	<i>gashtan</i>	to go round, to search
در آوردن (در + آوردن)	<i>dar āvardan</i>	to get out, take out, earn (lit. fetch out from the inside)
در	<i>dar</i>	in, at, inside
آوردن	<i>āvardan</i>	to bring, to fetch

Single versus compound

Let us look at the formation of different tenses of a compound verb in comparison to a single verb. Let's take the verbs 'to live' and 'to go' and look at different forms of these verbs in the past tense.

Single verb 'to go'	Compound verb 'to live'
رفتَم <i>raftam</i> I went	زندگی کردم <i>zendeḡi kardam</i> I lived
رفتِی <i>rafti</i> you went	زندگی کردی <i>zendeḡi kardi</i> you lived
رفت <i>raft</i> he, she, it went	زندگی کرد <i>zendeḡi kard</i> he, she, it lived
رفتیم <i>raftim</i> we went	زندگی کردیم <i>zendeḡi kardim</i> we lived
رفتید <i>raftid</i> you (pl.) went	زندگی کردید <i>zendeḡi kardid</i> you (pl.) lived
رفتند <i>raftand</i> they went	زندگی کردند <i>zendeḡi kardand</i> they lived

The noun or the preposition complement of a compound verb simply tags along as the appropriate tenses of the verb are formed. All particles, such as the negative **ن** *na-* or the continuous prefix **می** *mi-*, are only ever attached to the verbal part of a compound verb and never on to the noun or preposition part. Therefore, the

past continuous or habitual 'I used to live' will be **زندگی می کردم** *zendegi mi-kardam*. Similarly, 'they
did not live there' will be **آنها آنجا زندگی نکردند** *ānhā ānjā zendegi na-kardand*.

Insight

Compound verbs are made up of a verbal element combined with a preceding noun (e.g. ‘to live’, lit. *to do life*), a preposition (e.g. ‘to pick up’) or in some cases the short infinitive of another verb. In advanced or idiomatic Persian a compound verb could be made up of a preposition and noun plus the verb element (e.g. ‘to be born’).

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences into Persian:

- 1 She lived in our house in Shiraz.
- 2 I used to study in the morning and work in the afternoon.
- 3 You (sing.) don't like our food, but you like our tea.
- 4 We listened to the radio this morning.
- 5 They thought today was Monday.
- 6 You were surprised when you saw Maryam.
- 7 He made a difficult decision.
- 8 Have you repaired the car?
- 9 I have not worked since Tuesday.
- 10 Amir and Maryam sang at Pari's wedding.

Some useful compound verbs

to listen	گوش دادن or گوش کردن
to think	فکر کردن
to be surprised	تعجب کردن
to decide (lit. take decisions)	تصمیم گرفتن
to repair, mend	درست کردن
to work	کار کردن
to sing	آواز خواندن

Insight

Only ever conjugate the verbal element of a compound verb and not the noun or preposition.

Exercise 2

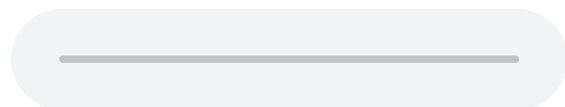
Translate the following passage into English, paying attention to the compound verbs:

ما سه سال پیش در شهر «بوردو» در فرانسه زندگی می کردیم.
پدرم در یک بانک تجاری کار می کرد و مادرم در مدرسه محلی
پیانو درس می داد. من در مدرسه با چند پسر و دختر ایرانی آشنا
شدم. ما آخر هر هفته یا در کوچه ها دوچرخه سواری می کردیم یا
در استخر شنا می کردیم. مادر یکی از پسرهای ایرانی هر یکشنبه
برای ما شام درست می کرد. من غذای ایرانی خیلی دوست دارم.
اما کار پدرم در فرانسه تمام شد و ما امسال تابستان به لندن
برگشتیم.

Insight

The negative marker or the prefix *-mi* are only ever attached to the verbal part and not the noun or preposition of compound verbs.

Exercise 3



Unit 13 Exercise 3 (1:37)

Use the Persian compound verbs 'to live', 'to work', 'to play', 'to speak' and 'to return' in this dialogue about your weekend:

You	شما آخر هفته چکار کردید؟ در لندن بودید؟ No, I worked all Saturday morning, then in the evening I went to my cousin's house by the lake.
You	آنجا چکار کردید؟ حتماً شب دیر رسیدید؟ No, I got there at about 9:30. We had supper and talked a little and then went to bed.
You	یکشنبه چکار کردید؟ On Sunday morning we went to a local market and then played golf. I came back home at about 6pm.
You	پسرعموی شما تمام هفته آنجا زندگی میکند یا فقط روزهای شنبه و یکشنبه؟ My cousin lives there the whole time.

Test yourself

- 1 Are most Persian verbs single or compound?
- 2 Do compound verbs behave differently from single verbs?
- 3 What do compound verbs consist of?
- 4 How are the negatives of compound verbs formed?
- 5 Where do you place the *mi*-prefix in a compound present tense?
- 6 What is the most common verbal element in compound verbs?
- 7 Form the correct compound verbs by linking the noun, preposition and verbal components below:

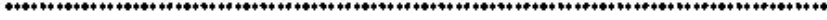
	درس
	تلفن
زدن	دست

خواندن	پیانو
کردن	شنا
داشتن	درست
انداختن	زندگی
دادن	دور
	حرف
	مسواک

8 How are the subjunctives of compound verbs formed?

9 What are the passives of compound verbs with 'kardan' کردن?

10 Can compound verbs consist of prepositions and adjectives and a verbal element?



He saw me in the library; the man was seen

In this unit you will learn how to

- Identify the direct object of verbs
- Recognize and form transitive and intransitive verbs

Dialogue

Unit 14, Dialogue 1 (2:05)

Mona, a visiting student in Tehran, posts a letter for the first time and tells Parvin about it. (Can you pick out the word *rā* را used only in some of the sentences?)

دیروز صُبح کُجا بودی؟	پ
به پُستخانه رفتم و یک بسته و دو نامه را به لُنْدَن فرِستادم.	م
با پُستِ زمینی یا هوایی؟	پ
دو نامه را با پُستِ هوایی و بسته را با پُستِ سفارشی فرستادم.	م
بسته خیلی سَنگین بود؟	پ
بله، آنرا روی ترازو گذاشتم. تقریباً یک کیلو و دوپست گِرم بود. و این دو فرم را هم پرکردم.	م
حَتماً گران شد. به اندازه کافی پول داشتی؟	پ
خوشبختانه پولِ نقد داشتم. کارمند پُستخانه به من کمک کرد و تمبِرِ درست را روی نامه ها چسباند. من دو تا کارت پستال هم خریدم. یکی را برای مادرم فرستادم ولی آن یکی دیگر را هنوز برای کسی نِفِرستاده ام.	م



Mountain village of Masouleh

- P** Where were you yesterday?
- M** I went to the post office and sent a parcel and two letters to London.
- P** By surface mail or airmail?
- M** I sent the two letters airmail and the parcel by special (registered) mail.
- P** Was the parcel very heavy?
- M** Yes. I put it on the scales. It was about one kilogram and 200 grams. And I also filled in these two forms.
- P** It must have been expensive. Did you have enough money?
- M** Luckily, I had cash. The post office cashier helped me and stuck the correct stamps on the letters. I bought two postcards too. I sent one to my mother but I haven't sent the other one to anybody yet.

Mountain village of Masouleh

Quick Vocab

<i>post office</i>	پُستخانه	<i>became, was</i>	شُد
<i>parcel</i>	بسته	<i>size, amount</i>	اندازه
<i>letter</i>	نامه	<i>sufficient</i>	کافی
<i>direct object marker</i>	را	<i>luckily</i>	خوشبختانه
<i>I sent</i>	فِرستادم	<i>cash</i>	نقد
<i>surface, land</i>	زمینی	<i>employee,</i>	کارمند
<i>air</i>	هوایی	<i>here cashier</i>	
<i>special, registered</i>	سِفارشی	<i>helped</i>	کُمد کرد
<i>heavy</i>	سَنگین	<i>stamp</i>	تَمبِر
<i>scales</i>	ترازو	<i>correct, right, exact</i>	دُرُست
<i>I placed</i>	گذاشتم	<i>stuck down</i>	چَسباند
<i>approximately, nearly</i>	تَقْرِیباً	<i>postcard</i>	کارت پستال
<i>form</i>	فُرم	<i>the other one</i>	آن یکی دیگر
<i>I filled</i>	پُرکردم	<i>still, as yet</i>	هَنوز
<i>for</i>	برای	<i>someone, no one</i>	کسی
		<i>with negative verb</i>	

Use of the direct object marker **را**

So far we have described the word order in a Persian sentence as *subject, object, verb*. We can now expand on this and add that the object of a sentence in Persian, as in English, can be either *direct* (specific) or *indirect* (non-specific). What do these terms mean?

Look at the following two sets of sentences:

We saw **him**.
 She heard **the news**.
 Did you buy **those new shoes** yesterday?

I went by bus.
 He slept well in his bed.
 They came to London three years ago.

The *objects* in the first group of sentences (in bold) are specific persons or items *directly* referred to, while the *objects* of the second group of sentences (underlined) are unspecific. Also, the direct objects follow the English verbs in the first set of sentences but a preposition such as 'by', or 'in' or 'to' separates the indirect objects of the second set of sentences from the verb.

A *specific* or *direct object* is that part of the sentence which is the immediate objective or purpose of the verb or the action in the sentence, while an *indirect object* means that there is enough information in a verb already to illustrate an action, and the *object*, usually with the aid of a preposition, gives further information about the action referred to and how it is related to the verb.

Insight

Verbs that are used in conjunction with a preposition in English will also be used with a preposition in Persian (e.g. 'to go to', 'to live in'). These verbs will not take *rā* را.

Writing rules

In Persian, when a definite noun, i.e. a noun as it appears in the dictionary, is the immediate and direct object of the verb, it has to be 'marked'. The marker is a suffix or *postposition* that comes immediately after the *direct object*. The direct object marker is را *rā* in Persian. The direct object can be simply one word, a string of words or it can be a whole sub-clause. را *rā* always comes at the end of the entire group of words that make up the object of the verb.

Learning how and where to use را *rā* is one of the more difficult aspects of Persian grammar, especially for speakers of modern European languages, where the equivalent of *rā* does not exist.

While you will have no problems translating a Persian sentence containing a *direct object* into English, because the marker را *rā* is there to be seen, you must make extra sure to remember to put a *rā* in, if necessary, when translating from English into Persian.

Types of verb: transitive or intransitive?

How will you know when a sentence requires را *rā*? The *direct object* of a sentence usually needs to be marked by the suffix را *rā* if the verb of the sentence is transitive. Therefore, before starting on the examples of را *rā* in Persian, we should perhaps learn how to identify a *transitive* verb. Fortunately, transitive and intransitive verbs are the same in Persian and English.

It is safe to say that a verb is either *transitive* or *intransitive*, although there are a very few verbs that can be described as *both* transitive and intransitive. A *transitive* verb is one that can take a *direct object*: e.g. the verbs 'to buy', 'to see', 'to bring', 'to read' and 'to deliver'. The main object of these types of verb has to be followed by را *rā*. Transitive verbs can be directly linked to their main objects as in 'I saw the photographs and heard the music', where *the photographs* is the *direct object* of the verb *saw* and *the music* is the *direct object* of *heard*.

An *intransitive* verb, on the other hand, is a verb that *never* takes a direct object. Verbs such as ‘to go’, ‘to sit’, ‘to sleep’, ‘to live’, and ‘to be’ are examples of intransitive verbs. These verbs never need ^{را}; however, they often need a preposition, such as ‘to go *to* the cinema’, ‘to sit *on* a bench’ so that the *purpose* of the action is further clarified. The intransitive verb is not linked directly to its objects, but the preposition that comes in between may relate it to the object, i.e. you cannot ‘go the cinema’, ‘sleep the train’ or ‘sit the comfortable chair’.

You can assume that unless the sentence has a transitive verb in it you don’t need to worry about putting a ^{را} *rā* in after its *object* when you translate it into Persian. But how can you tell if a verb is transitive or intransitive?

Insight

Look at what immediately follows the transitive verb in an English sentence. If it's a number, the article 'a' or 'an', a noun in the plural i.e. a generic noun such as 'films' or 'friends', or an adverb, the verb will not take *rā* را.

Here is a simple way of working this out. If you turn around and say to someone: 'I saw' and leave it at that, the question they are most likely to ask you to find out more is: 'You saw *what?*' or 'Whom did you see?' Similarly, if you say: 'Maryam bought', without elaborating further, the listener is likely to ask: 'What did Maryam buy?' However, if you say 'we sat', or 'they went', the question words that the listener will use to get more information won't be 'what' or 'whom', but he or she may ask: 'Where did you sit?'; 'Why did you sit' or 'When did they go' and 'How did they go'? No one ever asks, 'What did you sit?' or 'Who did they go?' unless they then add a preposition and turn the questions into: 'What did you sit *on?*', or 'Whom did they go *with?*'. Without adding the prepositions 'on' and 'with' to the last two questions the sentences 'What did you sit?' or 'Who did they go?' make no sense.

Only verbs that can be sensibly used with interrogatives (question words) 'what' and 'who/whom' are

transitive verbs and their objects, in Persian, are almost always followed by را *rā*. The verbs that cannot fit into a 'what' or 'who/whom' question sentence without the need for a preposition such as 'by', 'to', 'on', 'from' etc., are *intransitive* and as a rule do not take the را *rā* in modern Persian.

Example

Let us work this out by way of an example. Look at the following two sentences:

- (a) Ali saw his brother.
- (b) Maryam went to the park.

Now make question sentences using only the 'what' or 'who/whom' question words:

- (a) *What* or *whom* did Ali see?
- (b) *What* or *whom* did Maryam go?

As you see, question sentence (a) makes sense but question (b) is nonsensical. The verb 'to see' is *transitive* and therefore responds to a 'who/whom' or 'what' question, while the verb 'to go' is *intransitive* and does not work with these question words.

Having established the nature of the verb, we will next try to find out what the specific *direct object* of the verb 'to see' is in sentence (a). The direct object is always the answer to the question we form, i.e. 'his

brother' (*Whom did Ali see? Ali saw his brother* برادرش).

The specific direct object of the sentence is then followed by را in Persian.

علی برادرش را دید.

Very soon you will build up a vocabulary list of both *transitive* and *intransitive* verbs in Persian and will automatically work out if your Persian sentence containing these *transitive* verbs needs a را *rā* or not.

When to use را with transitive verbs

Here are more guidelines for when to use را *rā* in Persian.

Always use را

(i) After all proper nouns, such as Maryam or London:

مریم را دیدید؟ *Maryam rā didid?* Did you see Maryam?

لندن را دوست دارند. *Landan rā dust-dārand.* They like London.

(ii) After all personal and demonstrative pronouns, such as 'I', 'you', 'he', 'they' or 'this', 'that' and 'it':

من را در کتابخانه دید. *man rā dar ketābkhāne did.*

She (or he) saw me in the library.

تو را نمی شناسم - ترا نمی شناسم. *to rā nemishenāsam.* I don't know you.

بابک آن را به من داد. *Bābak ān rā be man dād.* Babak gave it (lit. that) to me.

(iii) After all nouns described by demonstrative adjectives or by the possessive *ezafe*:

آن خانه را دیدم. *ān khāne rā didam.* I saw that house.

خانه او را دیدم. *khāneh-ye u rā didam*. I saw *his* or *her* house.

کتابهای شما را خواندم. *ketāb-hā-ye shomā rā khāndam*. I read *your* books.

آن خبر را نشنیدم. *ān khabar rā nashenidam*. I have not heard *that* news.

(iv) When personal suffixes refer to individuals and thus specific persons:

کتابم را برد. *ketābam rā bord*. S/he took (away) *my* book.

اسمش را نشنیدم. *esmesh rā nashenidam*. I did not hear *her/his* name.

Summary

Direct objects of transitive verbs are always followed by **را**. Intransitive verbs, however, do not take a specific direct object, and therefore never come with **را**. The bridge between the object of the sentence and the verb is usually a preposition. Look at these examples:

کتاب فارسی را به کلاس آوردم. *ketāb-e fārsi rā be kelas āvardam*. I brought the Persian book to the class.

دوست مریم را در مهمانی دیدم. *dost-e Maryam rā dar mahmani دیدم*. I saw Maryam's friend at the party.

حسن دیشب به سینما رفت. *Hasan dīshab be سینما raft*. Hasan went to the cinema last night.

امروز عصر، دو ساعت در پارک راه رفتم. *Amrooz-e esher, do sa'at dar park rah raftam*. This afternoon I walked in the park for two hours.

Once you get used to the idea of an object marker in Persian, you will be able to make the final leap in this chapter and learn that there are instances when the object or purpose of *transitive verbs* is not followed by a **را**. Don't be deceived into thinking that because the sentence has a transitive verb ('to buy' or 'to hear') then there must be a **را** in there somewhere! You must always think about the *meaning* of the sentence and also look for the other giveaway clues listed in points (i) to (iv) earlier.

Look at the following sentences:

سوسن کتاب را خرید. *Sossan ketāb rā khared*. Sussan bought *the* book.

سوسن کتاب خرید. 2 Sussan bought books.

Although the verb ‘to buy’ is a transitive verb and therefore capable of having a specific direct object, it is only so in sentence 1. Here, ‘the book’ is a definite noun and the immediate object of the verb is the purchase of a specific book.

In sentence 2, however, the emphasis is on the *action* and on the activities of the agent, Sussan, who is the doer of the verb, and *not* on the verb’s object. The message of this sentence is that Sussan bought books *in general* as opposed to, for example, ‘sat in a café while she was at a conference in Tehran’ or ‘bought decorative tiles on a visit there’.

You will also notice that none of the earlier guidelines (i) to (iv) applies to sentence 2.

If a noun is followed by a modifier, the postposition **را** is placed after the entire group, even if it is long:

حسن را دیدم. I saw Hasan.

خانه حسن را دیدم. I saw Hasan’s house.

خانه دوست حسن را دیدم. I saw Hasan’s friend’s house.

خانه دوست آلمانی حسن را دیدم. I saw Hasan’s German friend’s house.

آن کتاب خیلی گران را خرید. He bought that very expensive book.

شماره تلفن مغازه دخترخاله مریم را داری؟ Do you (sing.) have the telephone number of Maryam’s cousin’s shop?

When two or more nouns are objects of the same verb, the particle **را** appears only once – at the end of the entire group:

خانه و باغ حسن را دیدم. I saw Hasan’s house and garden,

آن کتاب گران و این گلدان را خریدم. I bought that expensive book and this vase.

Insight

If any of the following comes immediately after the English verb, you must use *rā* رَا in the Persian translation: a proper noun, any pronoun (e.g. 'I, you, they'), any possessive (e.g. 'my, his, our'), 'the, that, these' or similar demonstratives.

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences into Persian:

- 1 I heard his voice.
- 2 My friend bought these books from the shop.
- 3 They brought the parcel to our house.
- 4 She gave these flowers to her.
- 5 I didn't see Maryam's mother yesterday.
- 6 We ate all those apples.
- 7 I took some food for him.
- 8 She gave it to her brother.
- 9 I saw you in the bakery yesterday. What did you buy?
- 10 Didn't you want this book?
- 11 Have you seen my friend?
- 12 I don't know them.
- 13 Have you heard the news?
- 14 I want the other car.
- 15 Who brought these flowers?
- 16 I gave your address to the students.
- 17 I ate well yesterday.
- 18 I ate at your sister's yesterday.
- 19 I ate the chocolate in the fridge.
- 20 Did you like the film?

Exercise 2



Unit 14, Exercise 2 (1:51)

Listen to the following text being read. Now translate it into English:

سه سال پیش در یک مهمانی در لندن با یک دختر ایرانی آشنا شدم. نام او مریم است. مریم عکاس است و روزهای سه شنبه و چهارشنبه در یک استودیوی عکاسی کار می کند. مریم خیلی سفر می کند و او را زیاد نمی بینم.

دیروز، پس از مدت‌ها او را در یک مهمانی، در خانه دوستم دیدم. پس از احوالپرسی و خوش و بش معمول گفت که خانه اش را عوض کرده و حالا در غرب لندن زندگی می کند. او گفت آپارتمان جدیدش را خیلی دوست دارد. مریم آدرس و شماره تلفن جدیدش را به من داد. این آپارتمان را مریم و دوستش امید، با هم پیدا کردند. اتاق‌ها را رنگ زدند، موکت آن را عوض کردند، آشپزخانه را تمیزکردند و در باغچه کوچک آن گل کاشتند. پنجره حمام شکسته بود و آنرا هم درست کردند. بعد، اسباب‌های مریم را به این آپارتمان آوردند. امید هم در مهمانی بود و مریم او را به من معرفی کرد. مریم و امید ماشینشان را نیاورده بودند و بعد از شام من آنها را به منزل رساندم.

Exercise 3

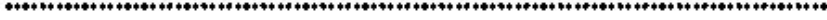
Unit 14, Exercise 3 (1:20)

Last week you bought a book for a friend but she already has it, so you must go back to the bookshop to return it. The English part of the dialogue is your cue. Can you say these sentences in Persian and work out what is being said in Persian?

You	Good morning, madam. I bought this book last Thursday. It was for a friend but she already has this book.
Assistant	کتاب را از این کتابفروشی خریدید؟
You	Yes, I bought it from here.
Assistant	متأسفانه ما نمیتوانیم پول کتاب را پس بدهیم ولی میتوانید آنرا عوض کنید و یک کتاب دیگر بخرید.
You	OK. In that case I'll exchange it with these two books, and I also want this book on Iran. How much is it?

Test yourself

- 1 What verbs are used with prepositions in Persian?
- 2 Is there a correlation between verbs that are used with prepositions in English and Persian?
- 3 How do we identify Persian verbs as transitive or intransitive?
- 4 How do we mark the specific direct object of a verb in Persian?
- 5 What is the simplest rule of thumb for knowing whether to use a 'rā' را or not when translating English sentences into Persian?
- 6 Does the object of a transitive verb followed by a number or 'a', 'an' or 'some' in an English sentence take 'rā' را in Persian?
- 7 Do intransitive verbs such as 'to live', 'to sit' or 'to go' ever take 'rā' را in Persian?
- 8 Must transitive verbs such as 'to buy', 'to see' or 'to like' always have a 'rā' را in Persian?
- 9 How many rā' را can any one sentence take?
- 10 Give four instances when rā' را must be used in Persian.

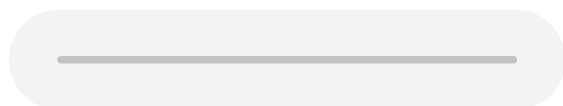


Going for a quick snack

In this unit you will learn how to

- *Form the present tense*
 - *Talk about what is happening now*
-

Dialogue



Unit 15, Dialogue 1 (1:36)

In this dialogue Shahriar is tempted to take a break:

- شهریار، خیلی کار داری؟
- ش نه خیلی کار ندارم، چطور مگر؟
- یک کافه خیلی قشنگ نزدیک اینجا می شناسم. من، گاهی، به آنجا می روم و چیزی می خورم. برویم آنجا و چیزی بخوریم؟
- ش بد فکری نیست. من دو سه ساعت بیکارم و گرسنه هم هستم. با تو یک قهوه ای می خورم.
- قهوه این کافه در تمام لندن معروف است. کیک و شیرینیهایش هم، خانگیست و خیلی خوشمزه است. آب میوه های خیلی تازه هم دارد.
- ش خوب، پس من به جای قهوه آب میوه می خورم. چه جور آب میوه هایی دارد؟
- هر جور میوه ای که در بازار هست. تمام میوه ها را می گذارند توی یک سبد بزرگ. تو میوه را انتخاب می کنی و آنها همانجا برای تو آب می گیرند.
- ش تو چه میخوری؟
- من یا شیر کاکائو با کیک می خورم یا بستنی.
- ش این کافه ساندویچ هم دارد؟
- بله. همه جور ساندویچ دارد. ساندویچ مرغ، پنیر، ماهی تن، کالیاس، تخم مرغ.
- ش پس من یک ساندویچ مرغ و سالاد با یک لیوان آب انار می خورم.

- Shahriar, are you very busy?
- S** No, not much to do (am not very busy), why are you asking (lit. but how come?)
- I know a very nice café near here. I sometimes go there and eat something. Shall we go there and eat something?
- S** It's not a bad idea. I am free (lit. without job) for two or three hours and am also hungry. I'll have a coffee with you.
- The coffee in this café is famous throughout London. Its cakes and pastries are also home-made and very delicious. It has very fresh fruit juices too.
- S** OK, I'll have (lit. eat) fruit juice instead of coffee. What sort of juices does it have?
- Any fruit that is in the market. They put all the fruit in a large basket. You choose the fruit and they 'juice it' for you there and then.
- S** What will you have (lit. eat)?
- I'll either have hot chocolate with cake or an ice cream.
- S** Does this café do sandwiches?
- Yes, all sorts of sandwiches: chicken, cheese, tuna, garlic sausage, egg.
- S** So, I'll have a chicken and salad sandwich and a glass of pomegranate juice.

Quick Vocab

<i>you are busy</i>	کار داری	<i>a thought, an idea</i>	فکری
<i>to be busy, have things to do</i>	کار داشتن	<i>a bad idea or thought</i>	بد فکری
<i>idiomatic why? why do you ask?</i>	چطور مگر	<i>two or three hours</i>	دو سه ساعت
<i>I know</i>	می شناسم	<i>I am free (lit. without job, preoccupation)</i>	بیکارم (بیکار هستم)
<i>sometimes</i>	گاهی	<i>hungry</i>	گرسنه
<i>I go</i>	می روم	<i>(spoken) a coffee</i>	یک قهوه ای
<i>something</i>	چیزی	<i>all of the ...</i>	تمام
<i>I eat</i>	می خورم	<i>famous</i>	معروف
<i>let us go</i>	برویم	<i>home-made</i>	خانگی
<i>let us eat</i>	بخوریم	<i>delicious, tasty</i>	خوشمزه
<i>thought, idea</i>	فکر	<i>they extract the juice</i>	آب می گیرند
<i>fruit juice</i>	آب میوه	<i>will you eat?</i>	می خوری؟
<i>fresh</i>	تازه	<i>either ... or</i>	یا... یا
<i>instead of</i>	به جای	<i>ice cream</i>	بستنی
<i>what kind?, sort?</i>	چه جور؟	<i>bird, hen, chicken</i>	مرغ
<i>all sorts, kinds</i>	هر جور	<i>cheese</i>	پنیر
<i>that</i>	که	<i>tuna fish</i>	ماهی تن
<i>they place, put</i>	می گذارند	<i>garlic sausage</i>	کالباس
<i>inside, into</i>	توی	<i>eggs</i>	تخم مرغ
<i>basket</i>	سبد	<i>glass, tumbler</i>	لیوان
<i>you choose</i>	انتخاب می کنی	<i>pomegranate juice</i>	آب انار
<i>there (and then)</i>	همانجا		

Forming the present tense

Persian verbs fall into two categories: regular and irregular. This should not come as too much of a surprise for speakers of English as many common English verbs are also irregular. Just look at these examples:

eat	eaten	win	won
meet	met	do	done
drink	drunk	fly	flown
buy	bought	have	had

The irregularity of a Persian verb does not affect its formation in past tenses and, as we have seen, you can easily extract the 'past stem' of any Persian verb from its infinitive by dropping the ending **ن** -an. The irregularity of some Persian verbs, however, means that extracting the 'present stem' is a little more difficult.

With regular verbs, all you have to do is to drop the complete ending of the infinitive, i.e. drop either the **تن** -tan, **دن** -dan or **یدن** -idan and what you are left with is the present stem. But how can you tell a regular Persian verb from an irregular one when you have just started learning the language? Well, I'm afraid, you can't. I can tell you that almost all infinitives that end in **یدن** -idan are regular and almost all infinitives ending in **تن** -tan are irregular. Infinitives ending in **دن** -dan are sometimes regular and sometimes irregular. What you can also do is to use the table of common irregular verbs (in Unit 16). If your infinitive is not listed in this table, it means that the verb you are looking for is regular and you simply drop the full ending of the infinitive to arrive at the required present stem. You will be surprised how quickly you will come to learn a lot of the common, irregular present stems by heart and you will need to use the table less and less.

Once you have extracted the present stem, all you need to do is to use a simple formula to form your present indicative tense, i.e. the simple present tense. This simple formula is: present indicative = subject (personal)

verb endings + present stem + **می**.

Insight

Drop the complete ending of the infinitive (that is drop the *-dan*, *-tan* or *-idan*) to get the present stem.

Let's work out the various components in this formula:

- می *-mi*, known also as the continuous marker, giving the sense of an ongoing or prevalent action; is the non-removable part of all present tense verbs in Persian with the exception of 'to be' and 'to have'. (I hope you still remember that 'to be' and 'to have' are irregular and do not always follow rules that apply to other verbs!)
- The present stem can be found either by looking up in the table or by dropping the full ending.
- Appropriate subject endings for present tense verbs include the five endings which we have been using for the past tense verbs plus one extra ending for the third person singular, i.e. for 'he', 'she', 'it', 'this' and 'that'.

These subject endings, which tell you who the agent or the doer of the verb is, are shown in the following table:

Singular	Plural
م ... <i>-am</i> I	یم ... <i>-im</i> we
ی ... <i>-i</i> you	ید ... <i>-id</i> you
د ... <i>-ad</i> he, she, it	ند ... <i>-and</i> they

Note that the only difference between subject endings for past and present tenses is the extra ending for third person singular in present tense formation, shown in bold in the table.

Example 1: the present tense of 'to buy' *kharidan* خریدن

The verb 'to buy' is a regular verb in Persian and therefore its present stem is formed by dropping the full ending of the infinitive, which means deleting **یدن** *-idan*. This leaves **خر** *khar*, as the 'present stem'.

Inputting the information in the formula: present tense = subject endings + **خر** + **می**:

you (pl.) buy **می خرید = ید + خر + می**

Singular	Plural
می خرم <i>mikharam</i> I buy	می خریم <i>mikharim</i> we buy
می خری <i>mikhari</i> you buy	می خرید <i>mikharid</i> you buy
می خرد <i>mikharad</i> he, she, it buys	می خرند <i>mikharand</i> they buy

Example 2: the present tense of 'to go' **رفتن**

'To go' is an irregular verb in Persian. Therefore we can refer to our table of irregular verbs and we will see that the irregular stem of this verb is **رو** *rav*.

Using the present tense formula: present tense = subject endings + **رو** + **می**:

I go **می روم = م + رو + می**

Singular	Plural
می روم <i>miravam</i> I go	می رویم <i>miravim</i> we go
می روی <i>miravi</i> you go	می روید <i>miravid</i> you go
می رود <i>miravad</i> he, she, it goes	می روند <i>miravand</i> they go

Insight

There are six subject verb endings for the present tenses. These are: -am, -i, -ad, -im, -id and -and. Remember that unlike the simple past tenses there is a third person singular verb ending for *he/she* or *it*.

Uses of the present tense

This is the tense of action happening in the present time, e.g. 'I am writing letters' or 'they are working':

نامه نویسم می I am writing letters.

کار می کنند. They are working.

It also refers to habitual actions, e.g. 'He buys a newspaper every day', 'We never eat breakfast':

(او) هر روز یک روزنامه می خرد. He buys a newspaper everyday.

ما هیچوقت صبحانه نمی خوریم. We never eat breakfast.

Similarly, the present tense is used when describing an action that was started in the past but continues in the present time:

بیست سال است رُکسانا را می شناسم. I have known Roxana for 20 years. (Lit. It is 20 years that I know Roxana.)

از ورود من به ایران پنج ماه می گذرد. I have been in Iran for five months. (Lit. Five months pass since my arrival in Iran.)

Persian also allows you to use the present tense to refer to an action happening in the future. This is particularly so in spoken Persian:

فردا عصر به شیراز می روند. Tomorrow afternoon, they are going to Shiraz.

سال دیگر یک ماشین نو می خریم. Next year we will buy a new car.

Insight

Always use the *mi* prefix with present tense verbs except with ‘to be’ and ‘to have’. You don’t say *mi-hastim* or *mi-hastand* and you shouldn’t use it with *dāshtan* either so no *mi-dārid* or *mi-dāram*. Having said that some educated native speakers use it erroneously so you can be forgiven if you lapse and use it too!

Exercise 1

Translate into Persian. Remember that some verbs may have a specific direct object.

- 1 I go to my mother’s house every Saturday and take her to the supermarket.
- 2 She lives in a nice, large flat with two cats.
- 3 Every morning we see your cousin on the bus.
- 4 Are you (sing.) writing a letter to Maryam?
- 5 They are coming to our party on Wednesday.

Exercise 2

From the following table match the present tense and past tense verbs that have the same infinitive.

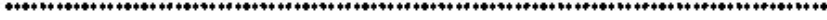
Present tense	Past tense
می گویم	خریدیم
می روید	آمدند
می نشینیم	ماندی
می گیرم	گفتم
می خوری	رفت
می آیند	نوشتند
می مانند	گرفتید
می خرد	نشست
می آوری	خوردیم
می نویسند	دیدم
می بینم	آوردی

Insight

With irregular verbs you may not be able to work out what the present stem is, even after dropping the full ending. In these cases look up the stem in the table in Unit 16.

Test yourself

- 1 What are the essential ingredients for forming the present tense?
- 2 Do subject endings for the present and past tense differ?
- 3 What are the present tense verb subject endings?
- 4 How do we extract the present stem of Persian verbs?
- 5 What happens if the verbs are irregular?
- 6 Do the verbs 'to be' and 'to have' follow the same rule in forming their present tense?
- 7 How are the negatives of Persian present tenses formed?
- 8 How do we express an on-going, progressive present tense action in Persian?
- 9 When can we use the Persian present tense?
- 10 How is the Persian present tense formed?



Grammar reference unit

Table of present stems of irregular verbs

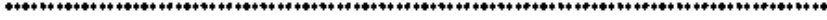
Translation	Present stem	Verb	Verb
to arrange, adorn, decorate	آرا	<i>ārāstan</i>	آراستن
to offend, vex, molest, torment	آزار	<i>āzordan</i>	آزردن
to test, examine, experience	آزما	<i>āzmudan</i>	آزمودن
to rest, repose, find peace of mind	آسا	<i>āsudan</i>	آسودن
to fall, happen, be omitted	أفت	<i>oftādan</i>	أفتادن
to create	أفرین	<i>āfaridan</i>	أفریدن
to increase, add	أفزا	<i>afzudan</i>	أفزودن
to pollute, taint, contaminate	آلا	<i>āludan</i>	آلودن
to come, arrive	آ	<i>āmadan</i>	آمدن
to learn	آموز	<i>āmukhtan</i>	آموختن
to hoard, to store	انبار	<i>anbāshtan</i>	انباشتن
to drop, throw	انداز	<i>andākhtan</i>	انداختن

to save, amass, accumulate	آندوز	andukhtan	آندوختن
to assume, suppose	انگار	engāshtan	انگاشتن
to bring, fetch	آر or آور	āvardan	آوردن
to stand up, stop	ایست	idtādan	ایستادن
to bestow, give	بخشا or بخش	bakhshudan	بخشودن
to take, carry away	بر	bordan	بردن
to tie up, close	بند	bastan	بستن
to be	باش	budan	بودن
to cook, to bake	پز	pokhtan	پختن
to accept, agree	پذیر	paziroftan	پذیرفتن
to pay, devote time	پرداز	pardākhtan	پرداختن
to suppose, imagine	پندار	pendāshtan	پنداشتن
to join, connect	پیوند	peyvastan	پیوستن

to be able to, can	توان	<i>tavānestan</i>	توانستن
to search, seek, look for	جو	<i>jostan</i>	جستن
to cut, pick, display, lay out	چین	<i>chidan</i>	چیدن
to stand, get up	خیز	<i>khāstan</i>	خاستن
to want, desire, wish, need, be about to do sth	خواه	<i>khāstan</i>	خواستن
to give, pay, offer	ده	<i>dādan</i>	دادن
to have, possess, hold	دار	<i>dāshtan</i>	داشتن
to know, understand	دان	<i>dānestan</i>	دانستن
to sew, stitch	دوز	<i>dukhtan</i>	دوختن
to see, realize, visit, view	بین	<i>didan</i>	دیدن
to steal, rob, hijack, snatch	ریا	<i>robudan</i>	ربودن
to go, leave, move	رو	<i>raftan</i>	رفتن
to hit, strike, play (instrument)	زن	<i>zadan</i>	زدن
to make, manufacture, build	ساز	<i>sākhtan</i>	ساختن

to entrust, deposit, leave	سپار	sepordan	سپردن
to compose	سرا	sorudan	سرودن
to burn (int.), suffer, grieve, pity	سوز	sukhtan	سوختن
to become, get	شو	shodan	شدن
to wash, rinse	شوی or شو	shostan	شستن
to break, shatter	شکن	shekastan	شکستن
to count, include, reckon	شمار	shomordan	شمردن
to recognize, know someone	شناس	shenākhtan	شناختن
to hear, listen to	شنو	shenidan	شنیدن
to send, despatch, transmit	فرست	ferestādan	فرستادن
to order, command, say (formal)	فرما	farmudan	فرمودن
to sell	فروش	forukhtan	فروختن
to squeeze, apply pressure	فشار	feshordan	فشاردن
to sow, cultivate, plant	کار	kāshtan	کاشتن

to do, complete	کن	<i>kardan</i>	کردن
to place, put; allow, let	گذار	<i>gozāshtan</i>	گذاشتن
to pass, cross; forgive; give up	گذر	<i>gozashatan</i>	گذشتن
to take, grab; seize; block	گیر	<i>raftan</i>	گرفتن
to flee, escape, run away	گریز	<i>rikhtan</i>	گریختن
to weep, cry	گری	<i>geristan</i>	گریستن
to turn; walk about; seek	گرد	<i>gashtan</i>	گشتن
to open (door, exhibition, etc.)	گشا	<i>goshudan</i>	گشودن
to say, utter, tell, speak	گو	<i>goftan</i>	گفتن
to die, pass away, perish	میر	<i>mordan</i>	مردن
to sit, land, perch, reside	نشین	<i>neshastan</i>	نیشستن
to play (instrument)	نوا	<i>navākhtan</i>	نواختن
to write, jot down	نویس	<i>neveshtan</i>	نوشتن
to place	نه	<i>nahādan</i>	نهادن
to find, locate	یاب	<i>yāftan</i>	یافتن



In a huff, through the door

In this unit you will learn how to

- Use prepositions ('at', 'to', 'from', 'by', etc.)
- Put prepositions into idiomatic use

Persian has only a small number of proper prepositions and this can cause some confusion for someone who speaks English, for example, which offers more choice of prepositions. This also explains why Iranian learners of English 'arrive *with* bus' or 'leave something behind *in* granny's': the prepositions 'by' and 'with' are the same in Persian, as are 'in' and 'at'.

Persian prepositions are divided into two groups: those that are followed by the *ezafe* and those which are not. There are only eight prepositions in the first group: **چُنْ، بَر، تا، بی، با، آن، در، به**. The six most used of these, **تا، بی، با، آن، در، به**, are explained in detail here, with examples of their use.

Prepositions that don't take the *ezafe*

به *be* 'to', 'in', 'into', 'at', 'on', 'with'

This is used in a variety of contexts but predominantly with verbs that are concerned with direction or location and would normally take a 'to', 'at' or 'in' preposition in English. It covers motion towards in a figurative sense. It is also used with adverbs of manner and in oaths.

(Note the necessity of use of prepositions in Persian and its occasional absence in the English translation.)

دیشب به سینما رفتیم. *dishab be cinemā raftim*. Last night we went *to* the cinema.

این کتاب را به مریم داد. *in ketāb rā be maryam dād*. He/she gave this book *to* Maryam.

به در زد و وارد شد. *be dar zad va vāred shod*. He knocked (lit. *on* the door) and came in.

مَرِّم و بَرادَرش به آنها کُماک کردند. *maryam va barādarash be ānhā komak kardand.*
Maryam and her brother helped them.

آیا فردا به خانه ما می آیی؟ *āyā fardā be khāneh-ye mā mi'āyi?* Will you come to our house tomorrow?

امروز به همکارم تلفن می کنم. *emruz be hamkāram telefon mi-konam.* I will call my colleague today. (Lit. I will make a telephone call to my colleague today.)

در اصفهان خیلی به ما خوش گذشت. *dar esfahān kheyli be mā khosh gozasht.* We very much enjoyed ourselves in Esfahan. (lit. A good time was had by us in Esfahan.)

آن قالیچه را به ما نمی فروشند. *ān qāliche rā be mā nemi-forushand.* They won't sell that (small) carpet to us.

این مشکل به من مربوط نیست. *in moshkel be man marbut nist.* This problem does not concern me. (It's none of my business or of no concern to me.)

خواهش می کنم به فارسی بنویسید. *khāhesh mi-konam be fārsi benevisid.* Please, write it (pl.) in Persian.

تاریک بود ولی هتل را به راحتی پیدا کردیم. *tārik bud vali hotel rā be rāhti peydā kardim.* It was dark but we found the hotel easily (lit. in comfort, with ease).

بهرام به دست و دلبازی معروف است. *Bahrām be dast o del-bāzi ma'ruf ast.* Bahram is known for (his) generosity (lit. for his open hand and heart).

دَر *dar* 'in', 'at', 'into', 'by', 'of'

This preposition is used to describe an area:

خواهر مَرِّم در لندن زندگی می کند. *khāhar-e maryam dar landan zendegi mi-konad.*
Maryam's sister lives in London.

در تابستان *dar tābestān* in the summer

امروز صبح، در فکر تو بودم. *emruz, sobh dar fekr-e to budam*. I was thinking of you this morning.

(Note: You can use the preposition **به** here too and say: **امروز صبح به فکر تو بودم.**)

رومی، شاعر ایرانی، در اروپا و آمریکا خیلی طرفدار دارد. *rumi, shā'er-e irāni, dar orupā va āmrikā kheyli tarafdār dārad*. Rumi, the Iranian poet, has a big (lit. very) following in Europe and in America.

آشپزخانه این آپارتمان شش متر در چهار است. *āshpazkhāneh-ye in āpārtēmān shesh metr dar chahār ast*. The kitchen in this flat is six metres by four.

از *az* 'from', 'by', 'through', 'of', 'than', 'among', 'by way of', 'out of', 'about'

از is used to express comparison, to denote direction or commencement of time and journey, to give an idea of distance, material make-up of something, causes or partition:

از این کوچه به بعد پارکینگ مجانی است. *az in kuche be ba'd pārkīng majāni ast*. Parking is free *beyond* (lit. from this street onwards) this street.

از صبح ساعت هشت منتظر شما بوده ام. *az sobh, sā'at-e hasht, montazer-e shomā bude-am*. I have been waiting for you *since* 8 o'clock this morning.

درس ما از فردا شروع می شود. *dars-e mā az fardā shoru' mishavad*. Our lessons will start *from* tomorrow.

این خانه از آجر ساخته شده است. *in khāne az ājor sākhte shode ast*. This house is made (lit. built) of brick.

آن مجسمه از مرمر است یا از برنز؟ *ān mojassame az marmar ast yā boronz?* Is that statute (made) of marble or bronze?

بابک در خانه اش یک سگ بزرگ دارد و من از ترس آن سگ

هیچوقت به خانه او نمی روم. *bābak dar khāneh-ash yek sag-e bozorg dārad va man az tars-e ān sag hichvaqt be khāne-ye u nemiravam.* Babak has a large dog in his house and I never go to his house because of the fear of that dog (because I am so fearful of that dog).

او از غصه بیمار شده است. *u az ghosse bimār shode ast.* He has become sick because of sorrow.

همسایه ما خیلی از فیلم جدید جیمز باند تعریف می کرد.

hamsāye-ye mā kheyli az film-e jadid-e jaims bānd ta'rif mikard. Our neighbour was full of praise of (lit. was very complimentary about) the new James Bond film.

مادرِ مریم از همکارِ من خوشش نمی آید. *mādar-e maryam az hamkār-e man khoshash nemi-āyad.* Maryam's mother does not like (lit. draws no liking from) my colleague.

ما دیشب دیروقت از کرمان رسیدیم. *mā dishab dir-vaqt az kermān rasidim.* We got back late from Kerman last night.

خانواده من از کاشان می آیند. *khānevāde-ye man az kāshān mi-āyand.* My family come from Kashan.

او از خانواده بزرگی است. *u az khānevāde-ye bozorgi ast.* He comes (lit. is) from a large family.

آن نقاشی از کمال الملک است. *ān naqqāshi az kamāl ol-molk ast.* That painting is by Kamal ol-Molk.

آن داستان از یک نویسنده جوان است. *ān dāstān az yek nevisande-ye javān ast.* That story is by a young writer.

از شهرهای ایران کدام را بیشتر دوست دارید؟ *az shahr-hā-ye irān kodām rā bishtar dust dārid?* Which one of the Iranian cities (lit. among Iranian cities or of all Iranian cities ...) do you like most?

Different word order for this example can be:

کدامیک از شهرهای ایران را بیشتر دوست دارید؟ از خواهرهای علی کدام در تهران به دانشگاه رفته اند؟

az khāhar-hā-ye ali kodām dar tehrān be dāneshgāh rafte-and? Which one of Ali's sisters has gone to university in Tehran?

این جاروبرقی خراب شده است، از آن استفاده نکنید. *in jāru barqi kharāb shode ast, az ān estefāde nakonid.* This (electric) vacuum cleaner is broken down, do not use it (lit. make no use of it).

چند ماه است که از برادرم خبر ندارم. *chand māh ast ke az barādaram khabar nadāram.* It's a few months since I had any news of my brother. (Lit. it is a few months that I have no news of my brother.)

تند نرو! از مغازه گل‌فروشی رد شدیم. *tond naro! az maghāze-ye gol-forushi rad shodim.* Don't go fast! We passed the flower shop.

این حرف را از عصبانیت زدم. *in harf rā az 'asabāniyat zadam.* I said this out of anger.

دوستم از من بهتر فارسی حرف می زند. *dustam az man behtar farsi harf mizanad.* My friend speaks better Persian than me.

جلوگیری از زلزله ممکن نیست. *jelogiri az zelzele momken nist.* It's impossible to prevent earthquakes (lit. prevention of is impossible).

از.
Note: The following are compounds made with

قبل از or **پیش از** 'before', 'prior to'

These are usually synonymous and interchangeable in use.

پیش از ناهار یک ساعت پیاده روی کردم. *pish-az nahār yek sā'at piyade ravi kardam.* I went for an hour-long walk before lunch.

قبل از اینکه به ایران بروم کمی فارسی یاد گرفتم. *qabl-az-inke be irān beravam kami fārsi yād gereftam.* I learnt some Persian before going to Iran.

بَعْدَ از or پس از 'after', 'afterwards'

پس از سه روز در شیراز به بندرعباس رفتیم. *pas-az se ruz dar shirāz be bandar-abbās raftim.* After three days in Shiraz we went to Bandar Abbas.

امشب، بعد از شام به منزل شما می آییم. *emshab, ba'd-az shām be manzel-e shomā mi-āyim.* We are coming to your house after supper tonight.

جُز از or غیر از 'apart from', 'other than'

غیر از پرویز، دو پسرِ دیگر هم در این آپارتمان زندگی می کنند. *gheyr-az parviz, do pesar-e digar ham dar in āpārtēmān zendegi mikonand.* Apart from Parviz two other boys also live in this apartment.

خارج از or بیرون از 'outside'

قیمت زمین خارج از شهر ارزانتر است. *qeymat-e zamin khārej-az shahr arzāntar ast.* Land prices are cheaper outside the city.

شما نمی توانید این لباس را بیرون از منزل بپوشید. *shomā nemitavānid in lebās rā birun-az manzel bepushid.* You cannot wear this dress (or clothes) outside the house.

با *bā* 'with', 'by', 'despite', 'because', 'in', 'to'

سارا دیگر با من حرف نمی زند. *sārā digar bā man harf nemizānad.* Sara no longer speaks to (lit. with) me.

با من مشورت کرد و با پولش یک ماشین خرید. *bā man mashvarat kard va bā pulash yek māshin kharid.* He consulted me and bought a car *with* his money.

نرگس با اتوبوس به تبریز رفت. *narges bā otobus be tabriz raft.* Narges went to Tabriz by bus.

این فرم را لطفاً با خودکار یا قلم پر کنید. *in form rā lotfan bā khodkār yā qalam por konid.* Please fill in this form *in* biro or pen.

احمد با خواهر شیرین ازدواج کرده است. *ahmad bā khāhar-e shirin ezdevāj karde ast.* Ahmad has married (lit. got married *to/with*) Shirin's sister.

دوست رویا با برادرش در سوئد زندگی می کند. *dust-e royā bā barādarash dar su'ed zendegi mikonad.* Roya's friend lives *with* her brother in Sweden.

با شنیدن این خبر خیالم راحت شد. *bā shanidan-e in khabar khiyālam rāhat shod.* My mind was comforted (rested) *after* hearing this news.

بهتر است با غذا آب نخورید. *behtar ast bā ghazā āb nakhorid.* It is better if you don't drink water *with* food.

مریم با سوسن میانه خوبی ندارد. *maryam bā susan miyāne-ye khubi nadārad.* Maryam doesn't get on well *with* Sussan.

با ادب و احترام بسیار از او خواهش کردیم که سالن را ترک کند. *bā adab o ehterām besiār az u khāhesh kardim ke sālon rā tark konad.* We asked him politely and with respect (lit. we asked *of* him) to leave the hall.

آنها همیشه با یکدیگر دعوا می کنند. *ānhā hamishe bā yekdigar da'vā mikonand.* They always fight *with* each other.

بی *bi* 'without'

بی can also be added to nouns and adjectives to form the opposite or convey the sense of ‘without’, ‘un-’, or ‘-less’.

بی خود این پول را به الهه دادی. *bi-khod in pul rā be elāhe dādi*. You shouldn't have given the money to Elahe. (Lit. You gave her the money with *no* good reason.)

بی تعارف می گویم، هر وقت دوست دارید به خانه ما بیایید. *bi-ta'ārof miguyam, har vaqt dust dārid be khāne-ye mā biyāid*. I am saying it *without* ceremony (i.e. without just trying to be nice), come to our house whenever you like.

می گویند گربه حیوان بیوفایست. *miguyand gorbe heyvān-e bi-vafāyist*. They say that a cat is a *faithless* (*unfaithful*) creature (animal).

Similarly:

بی کار = بیکار unemployed, jobless

بی ادب = بی ادب impolite, rude (lit. without culture)

بی تردید = بی تردید undoubtedly, without a doubt

بی چاره = بیچاره helpless, wretched, hopeless

تا *tā* ‘until’, ‘as soon as’, ‘by’ (showing the extent or limit of things), ‘as far as’, ‘in order to’

محسن از لندن به استانبول پرواز کرد و از آنجا تا تهران با اتوبوس رفت. *mohsen az landan be estānbol parvāz kard va az ān jā tā tehrān bā otobus raft*. Mohsen flew from London to Istanbul and from there took the bus *to* Tehran (*as far as* Tehran).

این کتاب را تا فردا تمام می کنم. *in ketāb rā tā fardā tamām mikonam*. I'll finish this book *by* tomorrow (lit. till tomorrow).

کلاس فارسی او تا ماه آینده تمام می شود. *kelās-e fārsi-ye u tā māj-e āyande tamām mishavad*. His Persian classes will come to an end *by* next month.

تا مرا دید از اتاق بیرون رفت. *tā marā did az otāq birun raft.* He left the room *as soon as* he saw me.

من به ایران آمده ام تا خانواده شوهرم را ببینم. *man be irān āmade-am tā khānevāde-ye shoharm rā bebinam.* I have come to Iran *to see* (lit. in order to see) my husband's family.

Here **تا** acts as a co-ordinate linking two clauses rather than as a preposition.

سالار هر شب از ساعت هشت و نیم تا نه و نیم به کلاس پیانو می رود. *sālār har shab az sā'at-e hasht o nim tā sā'at-e noh o nim be kelās-e piyāno miravad.* Salar goes to piano classes every night from 8.30 to 9.30 p.m.

دو روز است که از صبح تا شب دنبال این کتاب می گردم. *do ruz ast ke az sobh tā shab donbāl-e in ketāb migardam.* I have been searching for (looking for) this book for two days, from dawn *till* night.

حیف که تا آخرین روز اقامتش در یونان باران آمد. *heyf ke tā ākharin ruz-e eqāmatash dar yunān bārān āmad.* Pity that it rained *until* (or *to*) the last day of his stay in Greece.

در این مغازه به جهانگردان تا ده درصد تخفیف می دهند. *dar in maghāze be jahāngardān tā dah dar sad takhfif midahand.* In this shop they give tourists *up to* 10% reduction.

Prepositions that take the *ezafe*

There are great many prepositions that are linked to the noun following them by the *ezafe*. They are rather too numerous to list here, but the following are some of the most commonly used prepositions of this category:

پهلوی، کنار، نزدیک، بدون، دنبال، دم، سر، لب، درباره، پیش، برای، بالای، زیر، روی، پایین، جلوی، پشت،

Note that if the preposition ends with a vowel then the *ezafe* will take the form of the **ی** *ye* or the hamze sign **ء**. For example **بالا** 'up', ends with the long vowel **ā**, therefore the preposition 'above' will be **بالای** *bālā-ye*.

Here are some examples of usage:

برای 'for'

لُطْفاً یک چای برای من بیاور. Please bring me a (cup of) tea.

این کتاب را برای تو خریدم. I bought this book *for* you.

بالای 'above', 'top', 'on'

طَبَقَةُ بالای این ساختمان مالِ یک پزشک است. The *top* floor of this building belongs to a physician.

لیوان آب میوه را بالای تلویزیون نگذار! Don't put the glass of fruit juice *on top of* the television!

پایین 'below', 'beneath'

پایین تپه یک دریاچه خیلی قشنگ است. *Below* (at the foot of) the hill there is a very pretty lake.

زیر 'underneath', 'under'

در پیاده روهای لندن زیر پایت را همیشه نگاه کن! Always look '*under* your feet' on the pavements of London.

مواظب باش زیر ماشین نروی! Be careful not to get run over by a car (don't go *under* a car)!

گردنبند ژاله را زیر میز آشپزخانه پیدا کردیم. We found Zhale's necklace *under* the kitchen table.

روی 'above', 'on top of'

کلید شما روی میز راهرو است. Your keys are *on* the hall table.

اگر چیز داغ روی کامپیوتر بگذارید خراب می شود. If you place a hot thing *on top of* the computer it will get damaged.

جلوی 'in front of'

شبها فقط جلوی تلویزیون می نشینند. At night they just sit *in front of* the TV.

باید به هر قیمت جلوی جنگ را بگیرند. They must stop (lit. prevent, stand *in front of*) the war at any price.

پشت 'behind'

چرا پشت سر او حرف می زنید؟ Why are you talking *behind* his back?

خانه ما پشت سینما است. Our house is *behind* the cinema.

پهلوی - 'beside', 'by the side of', 'next to'

در سینما پهلوی یک آقای پرحرف نشسته بودم. In the cinema I was sitting *next to* a chatterbox (man).

کنار 'next to', 'by'

در هواپیما و اتوبوس دوست دارم کنار پنجره بنشینم. On the plane and on the bus I like to sit *next to* the window.

آنها خانه قشنگی کنار دریا دارند. They have a nice house *by* the sea.

نزدیک 'close to', 'near'

مدرسه بچه های من نزدیک یک پارک بزرگ است. My children's school is *near* a big park.

صدای آنها را خیلی خوب شنیدیم چون نزدیک صحنه بودیم. We heard their voices very well because we were *close* to the stage.

بدون 'without'

ایرانیان نمی توانند بدون ویزا به اروپا سفر کنند. Iranians may not travel to Europe *without* a visa.

دُنْبَال 'after', 'for'

(in the sense of 'to go after something', 'to look for something', 'to go and pick up someone')

چکار می کنی؟ دُنْبَالِ عینکَم می گردم. What are you doing? I am looking *for* my glasses.

آیا می توانید روزِ شنبه در فرودگاه به دُنبالِ ما بیایید؟ Can you come and pick us up (lit. come *for* us) from the airport on Saturday?

دَم 'next to', 'by', 'close to'

دَمِ درِ نانوايي مُنتظرِ شما خواهم بود. I'll be waiting for you *by* the entrance (lit. door) of the bakery.

سَر many meanings

(prefixed to a noun 'at the head of', 'at the end of', 'at the table', 'in the', 'during')

سَرِ كوچهٔ ما يك بقاليسٲ. There is a grocer's *at the top of* our street.

سَرِ كار با مَرجان آشنا شدم. I met Marjan *at* work.

سَرِ شام خيلي ساكت بود. He was very quiet *during* supper.

نبايد سَرِ كلاس حرف بزنيد. You must not talk *in* the class.

لَب 'edge of'

اگر اين گلدان را لبِ ميز بگذاريد مي افتد. If you put the vase on the *edge of* the table it will fall.

درباره 'about', 'on the subject of', 'concerning'

اين كتاب دربارهٔ چيست؟ What is this book *about*?

با دوستم درباره جشنواره فیلمهای ایرانی حرف می زدم. I was talking to my friend *about* the Iranian Film Festival.

پیش 'in the presence of', 'in front of' 'before', 'with', 'to'

کتاب من پیش شماست. My book is *with* you. (You have got my book.)

حالش خوب نبود و او را پیش دکتر بردند. He wasn't well and they took him *to* the doctor.

چرا پیش ما نمی آید؟ Why don't you come *to* us?

پیش استاد عمومی موسیقی ایرانی یاد می گیرند. They are learning Persian music *with* Master Omumi.

فردا شب پیش خواهرم می روم. I will go *to* my sister's tomorrow night.

Note: There is a very clear distinction between the uses of **به** 'to', and **پیش** 'to'. The preposition **به** is used for indicating the direction of movement *towards* something, as in 'going to a city' or 'into a house'. However, the English idiomatic saying 'going to someone's', even though direction is indicated, must be translated using the Persian preposition **پیش**. **به** **پیش** really means towards or into, so to say 'I am going to Yazd, to my friend's' would be: **به یزد، پیش دوستم می روم**.

Exercise 1

Unit 17, Exercise 1 (2:42)

Listen to the audio demonstrating the use of prepositions. Then translate the text into English:

مَغَاذَةُ پَدْرَزْنِ سِیْرُوسِ

پَدْرَزْنِ سِیْرُوسِ یَکِ مَغَاذَةُ سَبْزِی (vegetables, herbs) و میوه فروشی دارد. مغازه اش در خیابانِ فردوسی است. جلوی مغازه یک پیاده روی (pavement) باریک (narrow) و جوی آب است. چند درخت بلند و یک دکه روزنامه فروشی هم جلوی مغازه هست. در طرفِ راستِ مغازه یک شیرینی فروشی و در طرفِ چپِ آن یک کفاشیست. روی مغازه، آنطرفِ خیابان، یک آرایشگاه (hairdresser, beauty salon) یک بانک و یک آموزشگاهِ زبان های خارجی است. روی مغازه، مطب (surgery) یک دکتر است و پشتِ مغازه، یک پمپ بنزین است. پَدْرَزْنِ سِیْرُوسِ از صبحِ زود تا شب در این مغازه کار می کند ولی گاهی برای ناهار به چلوکبابی نزدیکِ سینما می رود.

خیابانِ فردوسی همیشه شلوغ است. فقط صبح های زود کمی خلوت (quiet) می شود. در این خیابان همه جور مغازه هست: کتاب فروشی، عکاسی، خیاطی، نجاری، بوتیک لباس، جواهرفروشی، نانوايي، قصابی، داروخانه و مغازه های دیگر. پَدْرَزْنِ سِیْرُوسِ همه نوع سبزی و میوه در مغازه اش می فروشد: جَعْفَرِی، نَعْنَاع، اِسْفِنَاج، سیر، کدو، پیاز، بادنجان، گوجه فرنگی، سیب زمینی، پرتقال، موز، انگور، انار، سیب، هَلُو، گُلابی و خربزه و غیره.

Exercise 2

Translate the following sentences into Persian:

- 1 Maryam came to our house last night.
- 2 We went to Ali's house by bus.
- 3 She put the vase on the table.
- 4 His shoes are under the bed.
- 5 I want to go to my grandmother's this weekend.
- 6 There is some food in the fridge.
- 7 Don't fill in the form in pencil.

8 Where are you going for your holidays?



Design on pottery, 12th century



Suggesting a visit to a friend

In this unit you will learn how to

- *Ask for things*
- *Ask someone else to do something for you*
- *Express wishes, hopes and plans*

Dialogue

Unit 18, Dialogue 1 (1:05)

In the dialogue, Maryam suggests a visit to a friend's house. (Listen carefully to the verbs.)

میخواهی امشب پیش هوشنگ برویم؟	م
نه مرسی. من امشب نمیتوانم هیچ جایی بروم.	آ
چرا نمیتوانی؟	م
امشب باید حتماً به کتابخانه بروم.	آ
چرا؟	م
چون فردا امتحان دارم و باید درس بخوانم.	آ
چه امتحانی داری؟	م
امتحان جغرافی دارم.	آ
امتحانات ساعت چند شروع میشود؟	م
ساعت دو بعدازظهر شروع می شود.	آ
کی تمام می شود؟	م
ساعت چهار تمام می شود. می توانیم فردا شب پس از	آ
امتحانم پیش هوشنگ برویم.	
بسیار خوب، به او تلفن می کنم تا بگویم فردا شب می آییم.	م

M	Do you want (us) to go to Hushang's tonight?
A	No, thanks. I can't go anywhere tonight.
M	Why can't you?
A	I have got to (definitely) go the library tonight.
M	Why?
A	Because I have got an exam tomorrow and must study.
M	What exam have you got?
A	I have got a geography exam.
M	What time does your exam start?
A	It starts at two o'clock (<i>lit.</i> hour of two) in the afternoon.
M	What time (when) does it end?
A	(It) ends at four o'clock (<i>lit.</i> hour of four). We can go to Hushang tomorrow night, after my exam.
M	Very well, I will call him to say that we will come tomorrow night.

Quick Vocab

mi-khāhi?	<i>do you (pl.) want?</i>	میخواهی (خواستن)
beravlm	(subjunctive) (<i>for us</i>) <i>to go</i>	برویم (رفتن)
nemltavānam	<i>I cannot</i>	نمیتوانم (توانستن)
hich jā-l	<i>to nowhere – to anywhere</i>	هیچ جایی
beravam	(subjunctive) (<i>that</i>) <i>I go</i>	بروم
bāyad	<i>must</i>	باید
hatman	<i>definitely</i>	حتماً
chon	<i>because</i>	چون
emtehān	<i>examination</i>	امتحان
dars bekhānam	(subjunctive) (<i>that</i>) <i>I study</i>	درس بخوانم (درس خواندن)
Joghrāfi	<i>geography</i>	جغرافی

Insight

The present subjunctive is quite similar to the present indicative in formation but instead of the *mi* می prefix you must use the *be* به prefix. There must always be another element in the sentence too that will make it a subjunctive sentence.

Forming the present subjunctive

When we use the present indicative mood, that is the simple present tense, we imply that an action has either actually happened once and continues habitually (e.g. 'I live in Iran', 'I work in an office') or will happen or is happening right now. The subjunctive mood, by way of contrast, implies that an action is possible, or suggested, i.e. it may, should or could happen.

In other words, while the indicative mood describes a *real* action, the subjunctive mood is used in sentences where the action is not definitely going to happen. The subjunctive verb is used when we make a wish, express a fear, anxiety or desire, point out a possibility or doubt or set a condition.

Therefore the formation of the present subjunctive is similar to that of the ordinary present tense with one small difference. The present subjunctive is formed from the present stem of the verb plus the addition of the personal endings and, here is the difference, the prefix به *be* is used instead of the prefix می *mi*, which is used for the ordinary present tense.

First, we need to work out the present stem in exactly the same way as we did in Unit 15 to form the simple present tense: infinitive → present stem. We can then use the formula: present subjunctive = personal endings + present stem + به.

For example, the present subjunctive of the verb خوابیدن 'to sleep' is formed by working out the present stem first: خوابیدن ← خواب. Then, following the formula we get the following:

Plural	Singular				
بِخوابیم	بِخوابم		یم	م	
بِخوابید	بِخوابی	=	ید	ی	به + خواب +
بِخوابند	بِخوابد		ند	د	

These give you the present subjunctive of the verb 'to sleep'. However, these verbs are only occasionally used on their own in a sentence. A subjunctive sentence normally needs its main subjunctive verb and also another word or verb to point out the sense of 'possibility', 'wishfulness', 'fear', 'obligation' or 'desire' and

so on. For example, in English, we usually say 'I want to buy an umbrella', 'She very much hopes to go to Iran this summer', 'We may come to your house', 'I must see that film' and 'They can't go to the party'. The underlined verbs in these examples, known as 'modals' ('can', 'want', 'must') *modify the main verb* by indicating the possible, wishful or obligatory sense of the action. They will look like this:

I *want* to buy an umbrella. می خواهم یک چتر بخرم.

She very much *hopes* to go to Iran this summer.

او خیلی امیدوار است (که) امسال تابستان به ایران برود.

We *may* come to your house. ما شاید به خانه شما بیاییم.
(ما ممکن است به خانه شما بیاییم.)
is also possible.)

I *must* see that film. باید آن فیلم را ببینم.

They *can't* go to the party. (آنها) نمی توانند به مهمانی بروند.

The subjunctive form stays the same whether the modal is in the present or the past. The present subjunctive is indicated by the stressed prefix **بـ** in the positive and by **نـ** in the negative. In many cases, the subjunctive, and thus the prefix **بـ** is the equivalent of an English infinitive, e.g. 'want *to go*', 'able *to stay*', 'hopes *to travel*', 'have got *to run*', etc.

Insight

Unlike other verbs the negative of the present subjunctive is not formed by adding a *ne* **نی** to the verb but rather you must drop the *be* **ب** prefix and just add the *ne* **نی**.

Other examples using modals

I can (am able to) see Reza. می توانم رضا را ببینم.

They could (were able to) come by bus.

می توانستند با اتوبوس بیایند.

You must (have to) work. (تو) باید کار بکنی.

A variety of adjectives may be used for the notion of 'must', e.g.:

I am forced to/must work. مجبورم کار بکنم.

I have no choice but to work. ناچارم کار بکنم.

It is better that you go/leave. بهتر است بروی.

Subjunctive elsewhere

There are many expressions besides the modals which also modify an action as hope, possibility, desire, intent, etc., e.g.:

I hope he phones today. امیدوارم (که) امروز تلفن بکند.

I feel like/inclined to sleep. میل دارم بخوابم.

It is possible that he may go/leave today.

ممکن است که امروز برود.

We wish to travel to China next year.

آرزو میکنیم که سال دیگر/آینده به چین سفر بکنیم.
(کاش سال دیگر به چین سفر بکنیم.) is also possible.)

The subjunctive is also used for suggested action, e.g. 'shall we ...', 'let' (بگذارید) 'before',
(جز اینکه/بغیر از اینکه) 'they', 'please', (بجای اینکه) (قبل از اینکه / پیش از اینکه)
(جز اینکه/بغیر از اینکه) 'apart from', (بجای اینکه) 'instead of', (تصمیم گرفتند) 'decided' etc.

Insight

The present subjunctives of 'to be' and 'to have' are irregular and have their own unique formation.

Exercise 1



Unit 18, Exercise 1 (1:40)

Read the story about Mr Halu, an absent-minded husband, and follow it on the audio. Then translate it into English:

آقای کم حافظه:
وقتی که آقای کم حافظه، صبح، از خانه اش بیرون می آمد، زنش
ی نامه به او داد و گفت: این نامه را حتماً امروز پست کن.
نامه خیلی مهمی است. فراموش نکن.»
ولی آقای کم حافظه حرف زنش را فراموش کرد و نامه را به
صندوق پست نیاذاخت. وقتی از اتوبوس پیاده شد و دوان دوان به
طرف اداره اش می رفت ناگهان ی آقای آهسته به شانه اش زد و
گفت: نامه یادتان نرود!»
آقای کم حافظه خیلی تعجب کرد و نامه را به صندوق انداخت و به
طرف اداره اش راه افتاد. در راه ناگهان خانم خوشگلی به او گفت:
آقا، نامه تان را فراموش نکنید.»
این دفعه آقای کم حافظه ایستاد و با تعجب زیاد گفت: خدایا! این
مردم از کجا می دانند که من باید نامه ای را پست کنم؟ من چند
دقیقه پیش آنرا پست کردم!»
در جواب خانم خندید و گفت: پس لطفاً این یادداشت را از پشتتان
بردارید.»
روی یادداشت نوشته بود: خواهش می کنم به شوهرم بگویید نامه
را فراموش نکند.»

Exercise 2

Translate the following sentences into Persian:

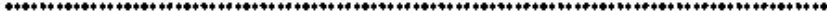
- 1 They want to see you tomorrow night.
 - 2 I can't go to my Persian class this evening.
 - 3 We hope to buy a bigger house next summer.
 - 4 She wanted to travel to Shiraz too.
 - 5 Please call before going to his house.
-

Insight

The third person singular of the present subjunctive ‘to be’, **باشد** is used in spoken Persian to mean ‘OK’ or ‘all right’.

Test yourself

- 1 When do we use the subjunctive in Persian?
- 2 How similar is the formation of the present subjunctive to that of the simple present indicative?
- 3 Can the present subjunctive be used entirely on its own or does the sentence require any other element that necessitates the use of subjunctive?
- 4 What are the verb subject endings for the present subjunctive in Persian?
- 5 How are the negatives of the present subjunctive formed?
- 6 Can there be more than one subjunctive verb in a sentence?
- 7 How are possibilities, wishes and hopes expressed in Persian?
- 8 Are the present subjunctives of the verb ‘to be’ formed the same way as those for all other verbs?
- 9 What are the present subjunctives of the verb ‘to be’ in Persian?
- 10 What does it mean if the third person singular of the present subjunctive ‘to be’, i.e. ‘bāshad’ **باشد** is used in spoken Persian?



Planning a summer trip

In this unit you will learn how to

- *Use the proper future tense*
- *Talk about holidays and holiday destinations*

Dialogue

Unit 19, Dialogue 1 (0:57)

د	امسال تابستان چکار میکنی؟
م	چند هفته کار می کنم ولی بعد به ایران خواهم رفت.
د	امیدوارم هر چه زودتر ویزایم را بگیریم.
د	چه خوب. در ایران چه کارها خواهی کرد و کجاها خواهی رفت؟
م	من با یک دوستم به ایران میروم. ما چند روز در تهران خواهیم ماند و بعد به چندین شهر سفر خواهیم کرد.
د	در ایران دوست و آشنا دارید؟
م	آره، تنها نخواهیم بود. در ماه ژوئیه چند نفر دیگر از همکلاسی هایم هم به ایران خواهند آمد.
د	مطمئنم خیلی به شما خوش خواهد گذشت.

D	What are you doing this summer?
M	I shall work for a few weeks and will then go to Iran. I hope to get my visa as soon as possible.
D	How wonderful. What sorts of things will you be doing in Iran and where (lit. which places) will you go to?
M	I am going to Iran with a friend of mine. We will spend a few days in Tehran and will then travel to a few cities.
D	Do you have friends and acquaintances in Iran?
M	Yup, we won't be alone. A few of my classmates will also come to Iran in July.
D	I am sure you will have a very good time.

Forming the proper future tense

It is quite normal to use the present tense for the future. However, there is a proper future tense in Persian and it is generally used for rather emphatic statements with reference to the future.

The formation of the future tense requires the help of the present tense of the auxiliary verb 'to want'

خواستن *khāstan* (present stem: **خواه**) and the past stem of the main verb. Remember that the **می** *-mi* prefix that is mandatory for present tenses is omitted from the formation of the future tense (see table).

Singular	Plural
خواهم رفت I shall go	خواهیم رفت we shall go
خواهی رفت you shall go	خواهید رفت you (pl.) shall go
خواهد رفت he, she, it shall go	خواهند رفت they shall go

Compound verbs are formed in exactly the same way: the verb element is conjugated and the *noun* or

preposition component tags along. For example, **زندگی کردن** 'to live' is shown in the following table.

Insight

Present tense verbs can be used for future actions. However, the proper future tense is used in simple predictive or expected future as in the English: 'I will go to Iran next summer' **تابستان آینده به ایران خواهم رفت** or 'they will be arriving soon' **به زودی خواهند رسید**.

Singular	Plural
زندگی خواهم کرد I shall live	زندگی خواهیم کرد we shall live
زندگی خواهی کرد you shall live	زندگی خواهید کرد you (pl.) shall live
زندگی خواهد کرد he, she, it shall live	زندگی خواهند کرد they shall live

An example of preposition + verb compound verb, **درآوردن** 'to take out, to get out' is shown in the following table.

Singular	Plural
در خواهم آورد I shall bring it out	در خواهیم آورد we shall bring it out
در خواهی آورد you shall bring it out	در خواهید آورد you (pl.) shall bring it out
در خواهد آورد he, she, it shall bring it out	در خواهند آورد they shall bring it out

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences into Persian, using the proper future tense:

- 1 I will see you tomorrow evening.
- 2 Will they travel by bus or by train?
- 3 She will write this letter next week and give it to me.
- 4 They will call us when they get back from Paris.
- 5 We will buy a much bigger house soon.

Insight

The proper Persian future tense is formed in an unusual way in that the past stem of the main verb is used in the formula. The subject endings are also not the conventional endings we have been using so far. Subject endings actually come before the main verbal element and are represented by conjugating خواه the present stem of the helper verb 'to want' *khāstan* خواستن (without the *mi* می).

Exercise 2

Translate into English:

- ۱ هفته آینده به ایران می روم و سه ماه در تهران خواهم ماند.
- ۲ حتماً امروز عصر این نامه را خواهند نوشت.
- ۳ کی به خانه خواهرتان خواهید رفت؟
- ۴ پیام شما را ما به بابک خواهیم داد.
- ۵ چند ساعت دیگر کارتتان با کامپیوتر تمام خواهد شد؟

Exercise 3

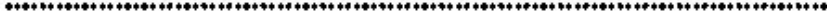
Unit 19, Exercise 3 (1:08)

In the dialogue below you hope to finish a letter in Persian in time to send it off to Iran with your friend's husband. Put the English sentences into Persian and translate the Persian parts too.

Friend	شما این نامه را کی تمام خواهید کرد؟
You	I'll try to finish it tomorrow evening, but I can't promise. Will you be at home?
Friend	بله، امیدوارم که بعد از ساعت هفت خانه باشم. من میتوانم به شما کمک کنم که نامه را به فارسی بنویسید.
You	That would be very helpful. I will come to your house after dinner at about 9:30.
Friend	شما شام بیایید پیش ما. بعد از شام نامه را مینویسیم و من آنها به شوهرم میدهم که روز بعد با خودش به ایران ببرد.

Test yourself

- 1 Is it absolutely imperative to use the proper future tense in Persian?
- 2 How else can we express future action in Persian?
- 3 Which auxiliary (helper) verb is used in the formation of future tense?
- 4 How are the subjects, that is the doers, of the future tense in Persian represented in the verb?
- 5 Is the component of the main verb in the Persian future tense extracted from the present or the past stem?
- 6 How are negative future tenses formed?
- 7 How would you say 'I will go to Iran next year'?
- 8 How would you say 'We will not stay at this hotel again'?
- 9 How would you say 'She will be in her office till 6 pm'?
- 10 What are the two ways to say: 'Will you (pl.) come to the cinema with us?'



How are you feeling?

In this unit you will learn how to

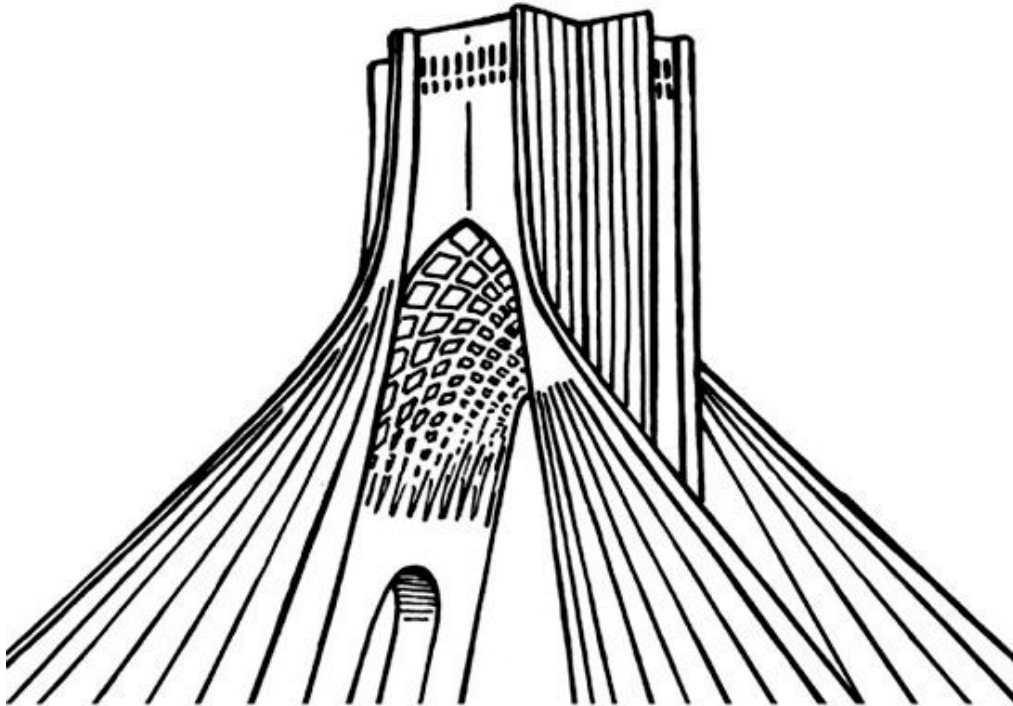
- *Use idiomatic impersonal verbs*
- *Express likes and dislikes*
- *Describe the various stages of going to sleep*
- *Say you are tired*
- *Say you are having a good time*

Dialogue

Unit 20, Dialogue 1 (1:17)

●	مریم جان، چطوری؟ خوبی؟ اینگار خیلی خسته ای؟
■	نه، چیزیم نیست. فقط خوابم می آید.
●	چرا؟ مگر دیشب خوب نخوابیدی؟
■	چرا، خوب خوابیدم ولی دیر خوابیدم. دیشب به ی
●	مهمانی رفته بودیم و خیلی دیر به منزل برگشتیم.
●	مهمانی چطور بود؟ خوش گذشت؟
■	جای شما خالی، خیلی مهمانی خوبی بود و جداً به ما
●	خوش گذشت. غذای خوشمزه، موسیقی عالی، بیشتر
■	دوستان و فامیل هم بودند و تا دیروقت رقصیدیم.
●	غذا را کی پخته بود؟
■	غذا را از ی رستوران ایرانی آورده بودند. اسم رستوران
●	یادم نیست ولی همه مهمانها از غذا خوششان آمد.

- How are you, dear Maryam? Are you well? You seem very tired.
- No, there is nothing wrong with me. I am just sleepy (lit. my sleep is coming).
- Why? Did you not sleep well last night?
- Yes, I did sleep well but I went to bed late (lit. slept late). We went to a party last night and returned home very late.
- How was the party? Did you have a good time (lit. did the time pass pleasantly)?
- Wish you were there (lit. your place was empty – you were conspicuous by your absence); it was a very good party and we had a truly good time (lit. the time passed seriously, pleasantly): delicious food, fantastic music, most of our friends and family were there too and we danced till late.
- Who had cooked the food?
- They had brought the food from an Iranian restaurant. I can't remember the name of the restaurant (lit. the name of the restaurant is not [in] my memory) but all the guests liked the food (lit. their pleasure came from the food).



Freedom Monument, Tehran

When we first discussed the formation of Persian verbs we emphasized that the ending of every verb lets you know who the subject is, that is the agent of the action undertaken by the verb, so when we see or hear the

verb رفتیم *raftim*, by looking at the ending ایم *-im* we know immediately that the action of ‘going’ was done by ‘us’, as in ‘we went’. However, there are a small group of Persian verbs that do not follow this pattern. These verbs are normally known as impersonal verbs and their formation requires a slightly more advanced knowledge of grammar. As these verbs refer to some of the most basic everyday actions and,

furthermore, are very frequently used by native speakers of Persian it is important you should know something about their use and formation. In addition, for some actions, such as ‘to fall asleep’, there are no verbs other than these impersonal constructions.

Impersonal verbs usually refer to actions that are perceived as involuntary. Sometimes this is clear to see, as in the example in the dialogue for instance. ‘To fall asleep’, for example, is usually outside our control and it happens while the subject, or the doer of the action, has very little say or control on the outcome. Other examples are ‘suddenly to forget something’ or ‘suddenly to remember’. The impersonal nature of these verbs is more or less as it is in English, when the idiomatic expressions for ‘forgetting’ such as ‘it escapes my mind’ or ‘it’s completely gone from my mind’ are used or when we say ‘it’s coming back to me’ or ‘it will come to me’ when we describe the involuntary process of remembering.

Impersonal verbs are *always* compound verbs. The formation and conjugation of these verbs are still regular but different from the standard Persian verb conjugation.

We can start by looking at the verb ‘to feel sleepy’ and ‘to fall asleep’ and compare these with the regular verb ‘to sleep’ to demonstrate the differences.

Look at the six cases of the simple past tense of the verb ‘to sleep’ in the table.

Singular	Plural
خوابیدم I slept	خوابیدیم we slept
خوابیدی you slept	خوابیدید you (pl.) slept
خوابید he, she, it slept	خوابیدند they slept

The subject ending is clearly different in each case, making it quite clear as to who has undertaken the action which is ‘voluntary’, in the sense that you can say:

I slept in the park last night. **من دیشب در پارک خوابیدم.**

They slept on (lit. in) the train. **آنها توی قطار خوابیدند.**

But ‘feeling sleepy’ and ‘falling asleep’ are perceived as outside our control, as if the force of sleep ‘comes’ (feeling sleepy) and then ‘takes us away’ (falling asleep). The impersonal Persian verb ‘to feel sleep’ describes this process exactly. Grammatically, it is the sleep that acts like the subject and the six cases will follow the pattern of ‘my sleep came’, ‘your sleep came’, ‘his or her sleep came’ etc. (see table). In all cases ‘the sleep’ is a third person singular subject so its verb component of ‘came’ will always be a third person singular verb and the compound ‘my sleep’ will be formed by using the attached, ‘suffixed’ possessive

م، ت، ش، مان، تان، شان
pronouns

Singular	Plural
خوابم آمد I was sleepy (<i>lit.</i> my sleep came)	خوابمان آمد we were sleepy (<i>lit.</i> our sleep came)
خوابت آمد you were sleepy (<i>lit.</i> your sleep came)	خوابتان آمد you (pl.) were sleepy (<i>lit.</i> your sleep came)
خوابش آمد he, she, it was sleepy (<i>lit.</i> his, her, its sleep came)	خوابشان آمد they were sleepy (<i>lit.</i> their sleep came)

Insight

Certain actions deemed as involuntary, impulsive or beyond our control can be expressed in alternative ways, as if they are done by someone else. The doer of the action will therefore always be a third person singular he/she.

مریم خیلی خسته بود و خوابش می آمد. ساعت هشت خوابید.

Maryam was very tired and sleepy. She slept at 8 o'clock.

بچه ها خوابشان می آمد و قبل از شام خوابیدند. The children were very sleepy and went to bed (lit. slept) before supper.

امشب خواب نمی آید. I am not sleepy (lit. my sleep is not coming) tonight.

Other impersonal verbs

خواب بردن:

'To fall asleep' (lit. sleep to take someone away)

Singular	Plural
خوابم بُرد I fell asleep (lit. sleep took me away)	خوابمان بُرد we fell asleep
خوابت بُرد you fell asleep	خوابتان بُرد you (pl.) fell asleep
خوابش بُرد he, she, it fell asleep	خوابشان بُرد they fell asleep

'To like' or 'dislike' someone or something **بد آمدن - خوش آمدن**. In this verb it is the person's pleasure or displeasure that is derived from something. This verb requires the preposition 'of' or 'from':

مایکل از فیلمهای جدید ایرانی خوشش می آید. Michael likes (lit. his joy comes from) the new Iranian films.

ما خیلی از این رستوران خوشمان می آید. We really like (lit. our pleasure comes from) this restaurant.

آنها از بوی ماهی بدشان می آید. They dislike (or hate) (lit. their displeasure comes from) the smell of fish.

The verb 'دوست داشتن' is the 'regular' version of this impersonal verb.

'To forget' یاد رفت (lit. gone from mind) is optional: 'I forgot' یاد رفت, 'we forgot' یادمان رفت. 'To remember' به یاد آمدن (lit. to come back to one's mind) به یاد رفت is optional:

من یادم رفت کیف پولم را بیاورم. I forgot (lit. it slipped my mind) to bring my (money) purse.

دیشب یادشان آمد که فردا تولدِ مژگان است. They remembered last night that tomorrow is Mojgan's birthday.

Insight

Imagine saying ‘his name has just escaped me’ or ‘gone from my mind’ instead of ‘I forgot his name’. Similarly you can say ‘it will come to me in a minute’ instead of ‘I’ll remember it in a minute’.

‘To have a good time’ is also an impersonal Persian verb, but it is formed slightly differently from the ones we have seen so far. This verb is again always in the third person singular, however, the subject is in the form of the relevant pronoun and the verb requires the preposition **به** ‘to’ as we can see from the following table.

Singular	Plural
به من خوش گذشت I had a good time	به ما خوش گذشت we had a good time
به تو خوش گذشت you had a good time	به شما خوش گذشت you (pl.) had a good time
به او خوش گذشت he, she, it had a good time	به آنها خوش گذشت they had a good time

در ایران به ما خیلی خوش گذشت. We had a lovely time in Iran.

امیدوارم به شما در مهمانی خوش بگذرد. I hope you have a nice time at the party.

Finally, **چیزی بودن** is another of these impersonal and also idiomatic verbs used to describe one’s mood or state of being. In the negative, it is close to saying ‘I am OK’: **چیزیم نیست** is implying ‘there is nothing wrong with me’ or ‘I am fine’.

Exercise 1

Translate into Persian using the appropriate impersonal verbs:

- 1 My sister went to Italy last summer and she had a very nice time.
- 2 I don’t like this colour but that blue is pretty.
- 3 You forgot to call Maryam yesterday.
- 4 We want to watch the ten o’clock news but I am too sleepy.
- 5 They fell asleep on the train and didn’t see the beautiful scenery.

Exercise 2

Translate into English:

- ۱ آنها از این محله شهر بدشان می آید.
 - ۲ تو چرا همیشه در جلسات سخنرانی خوابت می برد؟
 - ۳ هر بار که به ایران می رویم خیلی بهمان خوش می گذرد.
 - ۴ یادم رفت که فردا قرار دندانساز دارم یا پس فردا؟
 - ۵ اواز موسیقی ایرانی خوشش می آید.
-

Insight

Some actions deemed totally beyond our control can only be expressed in the impersonal way discussed in this chapter. The subject ending is always third person singular, whether it is present tense, past, future or passive.

Exercise 3

Unit 20, Exercise 3 (1:42)

Practise the use of impersonal verbs in the following dialogue. Classical music and making a reservation at a restaurant will be discussed:

Amir	شما از موسیقی اصیل ایرانی خوشتان می آید؟
You	Yes, I love Persian music, why do you ask?
Amir	آخر ماه آینده یک کنسرت با چندین خواننده مشهور ایرانی در تالار شهر خواهد بود. دوست دارید با ما بیایید؟
You	I'll definitely come. Which night is the concert on?
Amir	پنجشنبه، بیست و سوم. من همین فردا برای همه بلیط میگیرم چون میترسم که بلیط تمام شود.
You	Thank you so much. Shall we go to a nice restaurant afterwards? There is an Iranian restaurant close by.
Amir	بله، چلوکبابی یاس آنجاست و تا دیروقت هم باز است.
You	Right then. I'll book a table for eight people for 10:30.

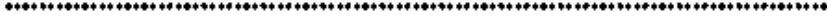
Test yourself

- 1 Give three examples of Persian verbs that are not conjugated in the usual way.
- 2 In these verbs who seems to be the subject (doer) of the verb?
- 3 List the attached possessive pronouns that you need to form Persian impersonal verbs.
- 4 Are there regular synonyms for impersonal Persian verbs?
- 5 Using the appropriate Persian verbs describe the various stages from 'feeling sleepy', to 'falling asleep' and then 'sleeping'.
- 6 In how many ways in Persian can you express 'like' or 'dislike' for something?

- 7 Can you think of a comparable, 'impersonal' way in English of saying: 'I'm sorry, I forgot', or 'I'll remember her name in just a second'?
- 8 How do you wish someone a good time in Persian?
- 9 Is this verb conjugated in the same way as the other impersonal verbs?
- 10 Rewrite the following two sentences using an impersonal verb:

خانهٔ مریم را خیلی دوست دارم.

نام برادرم را فراموش کردند.



Grammar reference unit

Arabic influence on Persian

Owing to the influence of Islam, the Arabic alphabet is one of the most widespread writing systems in the world, found in large regions of Africa and Asia that were conquered either by the Arab or Muslim armies or, later, formed parts of the non-Arab empires that had converted to Islam. The Arabic alphabet has been adopted by users of other groups of languages, such as Persian, Pashtu, Ottoman Turkish, Urdu and Malay (Jawi), to write their own vernaculars.

The presence of Arab conquerors of the seventh century in lands such as Persia often lasted for hundreds of years, inevitably leading to the importation of numerous Arabic words into the local language. Furthermore, Arabic was the language of intellectual, scientific and philosophical discourse used by countless non-Arab writers, in the same way that Latin served as the language of scientific and religious writing in Europe.

What distinguishes Persian from the languages spoken in other conquered parts of the early Muslim Empire, such as Syria for example, is that the influence of Arabic on Persian has been limited to the expansion of vocabulary and Arabic grammar has hardly touched the *structure* of the language.

Moreover, the Arabic words that have entered Persian have become ‘Persianized’ to the extent that they are occasionally unrecognizable to present-day speakers of Arabic.

Since 1979 there has been a propensity on the part of the judiciary and academia to borrow more Arabic phrases and to use them in broadcasts, speeches and writings, but again this is limited to an increase in the number of loan nouns, adjectives, adverbs and prepositions and it does not affect the construction or formation of Persian words. Arabic, a Semitic language, uses a root system that does not exist in Persian, which means that even when Arabic plurals are used in Persian, they apply only to Arabic words and Persian words cannot follow the Arabic pattern to form their plurals.

Someone who is learning to speak Persian does not need to have any prior knowledge of the Arabic language to realize quite quickly that certain words used in Persian can be grouped together, as there seems to be a ‘family resemblance’ demonstrated by the occurrence in each group of three fixed letters, appearing in different patterns. The following example should illustrate this point further. Look at these words:

درس - دروس - مدرسه - مدارس - مدرس
کتاب - کتب - مکتب - مکاتب - مکتوب

The following examples show how the Arabic root system is used to derive nouns by inserting certain vowel patterns in the blank slots in the root template.

Root form: *k_t_b*

Some words derived from the root form:

ketāb book

kotob books

katbi written

kāteb scribe

maktab (primary) school

Insight

Arabic words and expressions used in Persian sound rather archaic or classical to speakers of modern Arabic. These are mostly Arabic expressions that came to Iran over a thousand years ago and have in many cases become quite Persianized.

These Arabic words have been imported and lexicalized in Persian. So, for instance, the Arabic plural form for *ketāb* is *kotob* obtained by the root derivation system. In Persian, the plural for the lexical word *ketāb* can be given as in Arabic (*kotob*) or it can be obtained simply by adding the Persian plural marker: *ketāb* + *hā* → *ketābhā*.

The learner of basic Persian does not need to worry about learning the rules of Arabic word formation and can merely learn the common Arabic words that have everyday usage as part of his or her vocabulary. However, in-depth study of the Persian literature and even understanding the subtleties of the common language will not be possible without some knowledge of Arabic.

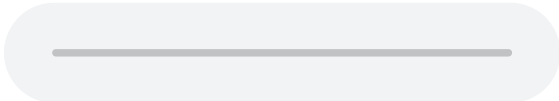
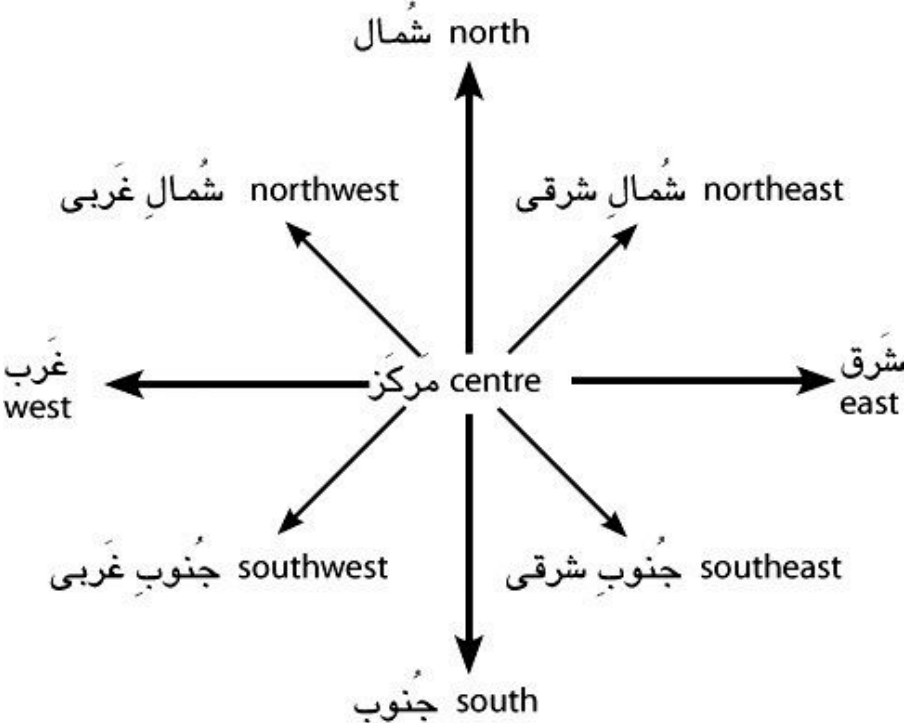
Unit 21, Track 1 (1:11)

The following is an example of a text that relies on many Arabic words and derivatives (and a translation can be found in the Key):

کتبی هست که می توانیم جواب سؤال های مختلف را در آنها پیدا کنیم. این کتابها را لغت نامه و دایرة المعارف می خوانیم. در این کتابها کلمه ها و اسامی به ترتیب الفبایی و با حروف سیاه درج شده و درباره هریک توضیح مفصلی با حروف نازک داده شده است. دایرة المعارف معمولاً کتاب قطوری است که می توانیم هر نوع اطلاعات علمی، ادبی، هنری، تاریخی، جغرافیایی و جز اینها را در آن بیابیم. برخی از دایرة المعارف ها در جلدهای متعددی فراهم آمده است.

.....

The story of Iran



کشور ایران در نیمکره شمالی و در جنوب غربی آسیا است. ایران یکی از کشورهای بزرگ خاورمیانه است. مساحت ایران ۱۶۴۸۱۹۵ (یک میلیون و ششصد و چهل و هشت هزار و صد و نود و پنج) کیلومتر مربع است. ایران با هفت کشور همسایه است. در شمال و شمال شرقی، ایران با جمهوری ترکمنستان و در شمال غربی با جمهوری های آذربایجان و ارمنستان هم مرز است. پایتخت آذربایجان شهر باکو است. پایتخت جمهوری ارمنستان، شهر ایروان است و عشق آباد پایتخت جمهوری ترکمنستان است. در شرق ایران کشور افغانستان قرار دارد و پاکستان در جنوب شرقی ایران است.

پایتخت افغانستان شهر کابل و پایتخت پاکستان، اسلام آباد است. ایران دو همسایه غربی دارد: کشور ترکیه در شمال غربی و کشور عراق در غرب.

پایتخت ترکیه، آنکارا و پایتخت عراق شهر تاریخی بغداد است. مرز بین ایران و همسایگان در جاهایی بسیار کوتاه و در جاهای دیگر طولانیست.

مثلاً، مرز ایران و جمهوری ارمنستان فقط ۳۸ (سی و هشت) کیلومتر است ولی مرز بین ایران و عراق ۱۶۰۹ (هزار و ششصد و نه) کیلومتر است. ایران یک کشور کوهستانی و نسبتاً خشک است ولی در شمال و جنوب ایران دو دریای خیلی بزرگ قرار دارد. دریای خزر در شمال ایرانست و خلیج فارس در جنوب ایران. دریای خزر با ۴۲۴۲۰۰ (چهارصد و

بیست و چهار هزار و دویست) کیلومتر مربع وسعت، بزرگترین دریاچه جهان است. خاویار دریای خزر در دنیا معروف است. مرز ایران و آب های خلیج فارس ۲۰۴۳ (دوهزار و چهل و سه) کیلومتر است. خلیج فارس چه اهمیتی دارد؟ نفت ایران و کشورهای دیگر منطقه از راه خلیج فارس به اقیانوس هند و از آنجا به کشورهای دیگر دنیا می رود. مروارید و ماهی های خلیج فارس هم خیلی معروف است. جمعیت ایران نزدیک به شصت و هشت میلیون نفر است. زبان رسمی بیشتر مردم ایران فارسی است ولی خیلی از ایرانیان، ترکی، کردی یا عربی حرف می زنند.

۹۹٪ (نود و نه درصد) مردم ایران مسلمان هستند: ۸۹٪ (هشتاد و نه درصد) شیعه و ۱۰٪ (ده درصد) سنی. ولی تا پیش از قرن هفتم میلادی، بیشتر ایرانیان زرتشتی بودند و هنوز هم زرتشتیان، یهودیان و مسیحیان در ایران زندگی می کنند.

* The population of Iran is nearer 70 million (2010)

پایتخت ایران شهر تهران است. اصفهان، شیراز، تبریز، کرمانشاه، اهواز، رشت و مشهد از شهرهای بزرگ ایرانند.

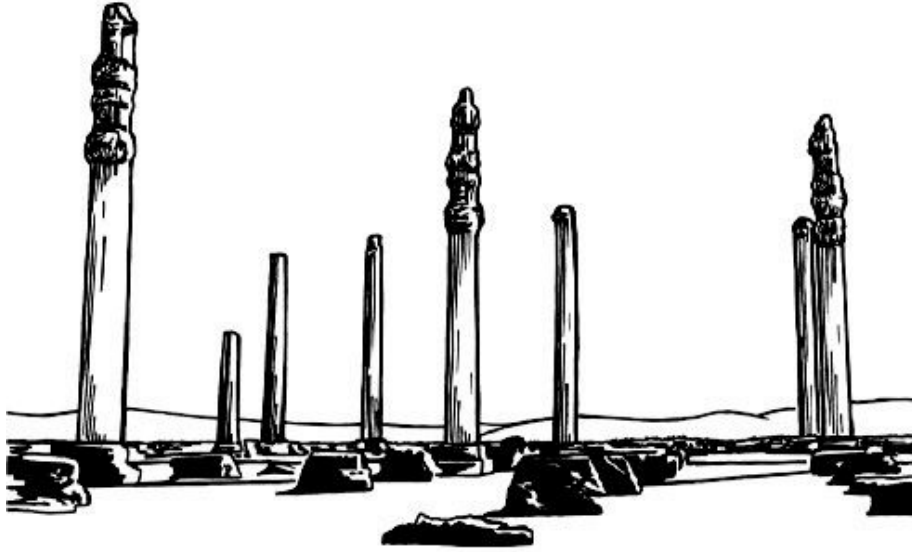
شهر تهران در دامنه کوه است. هوای تهران در تابستان خیلی گرم و در زمستان خیلی سرد و برفی است. بهار و پاییز تهران بسیار زیباست. روز اول بهار، نوروز، و عید باستانی ایرانیان است.

رنگ های گلیم، قالیچه، و قالی های ایرانی همان رنگ های طبیعت ایران است. گلیم، قالیچه، و قالی های ایرانی بسیار زیبا و قشنگند. شاعران بزرگ ایران هم معروف اند. یکی از شاعران بزرگ ایران فردوسی نام دارد.

او بیشتر از هزار سال پیش در شهر طوس، در شمال شرقی ایران به دنیا آمد.

این شعر فردوسی آرمان خوبی برای زندگیست:

توانا بود هر که دانا بود
ze dānesh del-e pir bornā bovad
tavānā bovad har ke dānā bovad



Persepolis: the Columns

QUICK VOCAB

keshvar	<i>country</i>	کشور
dar	<i>in</i>	در
nīm-kore	<i>hemisphere</i>	نیمکره
shomāl	<i>northern</i>	شمالی
Jonub	<i>south</i>	جنوب
gharbi	<i>western</i>	غربی
ast	<i>is</i>	است
yekī az	<i>one of</i>	یکی از
bozorg	<i>big, large</i>	بزرگ
khāvar-e miyane	<i>Middle East</i>	خاورمیانه
masāhat	<i>surface area, expanse</i>	مساحت
moraba'	<i>square</i>	مربع
bā	<i>with, by</i>	با
haft	<i>seven</i>	هفت
hamsāye	<i>neighbour</i>	همسایه (همسایگان)
shomāl	<i>north</i>	شمال
Jomhuri	<i>republic</i>	جمهوری
shomāl-e sharqi	<i>northeast</i>	شمال شرقی
ham-marz	<i>with common border, sharing the same border</i>	هم مرز
pāytakht	<i>capital city</i>	پایتخت
shahr	<i>city</i>	شهر
qarār dārad	<i>placed, situated</i> قرار داشتن from <i>infinitive to be situated</i>	قرار دارد
tārīkhi	<i>historic</i>	تاریخی

jā	<i>place</i>	جا
jāhā	<i>places (pl.)</i>	جاها
jāhā'ī	<i>some places (indefinite pl.)</i>	جاهایی
besiyār	<i>much, very</i>	بسیار
kutāh	<i>short (brief)</i>	کوتاه
tulāni	<i>long</i>	طولانی
masalan	<i>for instance, for example</i>	مثلاً
faqat	<i>only</i>	فقط
vall	<i>however, but</i>	ولی
kuhestāni	<i>mountainous</i>	کوهستانی
nesbatan	<i>relatively</i>	نسبتاً
khoshk	<i>dry, arid</i>	خشک
daryā	<i>sea</i>	دریا
kheyli	<i>very, much</i>	خیلی
daryā-ye kheyli bozorg	<i>very big sea</i>	دریای خیلی بزرگ
khazar	<i>the Caspian</i>	خزر
Khalij-e fārs	<i>Persian Gulf</i>	خلیج فارس
vos'at	<i>expanse, surface area</i>	وسعت
bozorgtarin	<i>biggest, largest</i>	بزرگترین
daryāche	<i>lake</i>	دریاچه
Jahān	<i>world</i>	جهان
bozorgtarin daryāche-ye Jahān	<i>biggest lake in the world</i>	بزرگترین دریاچه جهان
āb	<i>water</i>	آب
khāviyār	<i>caviar</i>	خاویار
dar	<i>in, at</i>	در

donyā	world	دُنیا
ma'ruf	famous	مَعْرُوف
che?	what?	چِه؟
ahammiyat	importance, significance	أَهْمِيَّة
naft	oil	نَفْت
digar	other	دِيْغَر
mantaqe	region	مَنْطَقَه
az	from, of, through	أَز
rāh	way, path, road	رَاه
be	to	بِه
oqlyānus	ocean	أَقْيَانُوس
hend	India	هِنْد
ānjā	there, that place	أَنْجَا
miravad	(to go رَفْتَن inf.) goes, 3rd per. sing. present tense	مِي رُود
morvārid	pearl	مُرَوْرِيد
māhi	fish	مَاهِي
ham	also, too	هَمْ
Jam'lyyat	population	جَمْعِيَّة
nazdik	near by, close to	نَزْدِيْكَ
shast o hasht	68	شَصْت وَ هَشْت
nafar	persons	نَفَر
zabān	language (tongue)	زَبَان
rasmi	official	رَسْمِي
bishtar	here most of (more, majority)	بِيْشْتَر
mardom	people	مَرْدَم

harf mizanand	they speak	حَرْف می رَنند
mosalmān	Muslims	مُسَلْمَان
hastand	they are	هَسْتَنَد
shī'e	Shi'ite	شِیعِه
sonni	Sunni	سُنِی
pish az	before, prior to	پیش از
qarn	century	قَرَن
haftom	seventh	هَفْتَم
milādi	Christian era (BCE)	میلادی
zartoshti	Zoroastrian	زرتشتی
budand	they were	بودند
hanuz	still, as yet	هنوز
yahudi	Jewish	یهودی pl. یهودیان
masihi	Christian	مسیحیان pl. مسیحی
zendegi mi-konand	they live	زندگی می کنند
dāmane	outskirts	دامنه
kuh	mountain	کوه
havā	weather (also air)	هوا
tābestān	summer	تابستان
garm	warm (hot)	گرم
zemestān	winter	زمستان
sard	cold	سرد
barfi	snowy	برفی
bahār	spring	بهار
pā'iz	autumn	پاییز
zibā	pretty (beautiful)	زیبا
ruz	day	روز

avval	<i>first</i>	أَوَّل
noruz	<i>first day of Persian New Year</i>	نوروز
'eld	<i>festival, feast, celebration</i>	عید
bāstani	<i>ancient</i>	باستانی
rang	<i>colour, shade</i>	رنگ
gellm	<i>kelim rugs</i>	گِلم
qālliche	<i>small rugs</i>	قالیچه
qāll	<i>carpet</i>	قالی
hamān	<i>that very</i>	همان
tabl'at	<i>nature</i>	طبیعت
qashang	<i>beautiful</i>	قَشَنگ
shā'er	<i>poet</i>	شاعر
nām dārad	<i>is named</i>	نام دارد
hezār	<i>thousand</i>	هزار
sāl	<i>year</i>	سال
sāl-e plsh	<i>year(s) ago</i>	سال پیش
be donyā āmad	<i>was born, lit. came to the world</i>	به دنیا آمد
In she'r	<i>this poem</i>	این شعر
ārmān	<i>maxim</i>	آرمان
khub	<i>good</i>	خوب
khubl	<i>a good</i>	خوبی
barā-ye	<i>for</i>	برای
zendegi	<i>life</i>	زندگی

[The country of] Iran is [situated] in the northern hemisphere, in southwest Asia. Iran is one of the largest countries of the Middle East. Iran's area is 1,648,195 square kilometres. Iran borders onto seven countries (lit. is neighbours with seven countries). To the north and the northeast, Iran borders onto the Republic of Turkmenistan and in the northwest it borders onto the Republics of Azerbaijan and Armenia.

The capital of Azerbaijan is the city of Baku. The capital of the Republic of Armenia is the city of Yerevan and Ashkabad is the capital of the Republic of Turkmenistan.

[The country of] Afghanistan is situated to the east of Iran and Pakistan is to the southeast [borders] of Iran. The capital of Afghanistan is Kabul and Pakistan's capital is Islamabad.

Iran has two western neighbours: Turkey in the northwest and Iraq in the west.

The capital of Turkey is Ankara and the capital of Iraq is the historic city of Baghdad.

The border between Iran and its neighbours at some points is very short and at others it is long. For example, the border between Iran and the Republic of Armenia is only 38 km but the border between Iran and Iraq is 1,609 km.

Iran is a mountainous and relatively dry country; however, two very large seas lie to the north and the south of Iran. The Caspian Sea is to the north of Iran and the Persian Gulf is to the south. The Caspian Sea, with an area of 424,200 sq km, is the biggest lake in the world. The caviar of the Caspian is world famous. The Persian Gulf and Iran share a 2,043-km long border. What is the significance of the Persian Gulf? The oil from Iran and from other countries of the region goes to other countries of the world by way of the Persian Gulf and through the Indian Ocean. The pearls and fish from the Persian Gulf are also very renowned.

The population of Iran is nearly 70 million. The official language of most people in Iran is Persian; however, many Iranians speak Turkish, Kurdish or Arabic.

Ninety-nine per cent of the people in Iran are Muslim: 89% Shi'ite and 10% Sunni. However, before the seventh century (BCE), Iranians were Zoroastrian and Zoroastrians, Jews and Christians still live in Iran.

The capital of Iran is the city of Tehran. Esfahan, Shiraz, Tabriz, Kermanshah, Ahvaz, Rasht and Mashhad are the big cities of Iran. The city of Tehran is in the foothills of mountains. The weather in Tehran is very hot in the summer and very cold and snowy in winter. The spring and autumn in Tehran are very beautiful. The first day of the spring is *noruz*, 'the new (year) day', and an ancient festival of the Iranians.

The colours of Persian kelims, rugs and carpets are the very colours of nature in Iran. Persian rugs and carpets are very pretty and beautiful.

The great poets of Iran are also famous. One of the great poets of Iran is called Ferdosi. He was born, more than 1,000 years ago, in the city of Tus, in northeast Iran.

This poem of Ferdosi is a good maxim for life:

Knowledge is Power. (*Lit.* He who has knowledge is powerful.)
It is from knowledge that the heart of an old person remains rejuvenated.

.....

Taking it further

Persian/Iranian studies are offered at undergraduate or postgraduate level at the following universities: University of London School of Oriental and African Studies, Cambridge, Edinburgh, Oxford, Manchester, and Durham; Australian National University (ANU); Harvard, New York University, Princeton, Columbia, Texas Austin, Utah, Chicago and Toronto.

The internet will give you access to a wealth of resources on Persian culture. The Iranian Cultural and Information Center at

<http://tehran.stanford.edu/>

is a good place to start, with its many sections (history, literature, names, etc.).

The British Institute of Persian Studies, at the British Academy, 10 Carlton House Terrace, London SW1Y 5AH, is another fine resource.

<http://www.bips.ac.uk>

Language resources are available at

<http://www.columbia.edu/cu/lweb/indiv/mideast/cuvm/persian.html>

News is available from the BBC at

<http://www.bbc.co.uk/persian/>

The following official government websites will give you valuable information:

<http://www.gov.ir/>

For a real treasure trove, go to

<http://www.iranian.com>

For the latest cultural events in the UK go to:

<http://iranheritage.org>

And for a list of all Iranian newspapers, radio and TV and much, much more go to

<http://www.gooya.com>

.....

Appendix: complex grammar

Complex sentences in Persian

Complex sentences can mean anything from two simple sentences linked by the conjunction ‘and’ to very complex sentences containing subordinate and relative clauses, temporal and dependent clauses as well as indirect statements.

The purpose of this appendix is to refer to some aspects of relative clauses because although they are considered as advanced grammar they are used widely in everyday conversation and writing.

Co-ordinate sentences

When two sentences are linked by ‘and’ **و** they form the simplest of complex sentences:

مریم آمد و کتابم را آورد. Maryam arrived and brought my book.

The link can also be ‘but’ or ‘however’:

من ژاپنی هستم ولی در پاریس زندگی می کنم. I am Japanese but I live in Paris.

When the two actions in the two parts of the sentence follow each other in time and the agent or subject of the verb is the same person, the co-ordinate ‘and’ **و** can be omitted:

به بازار رفتم میوه خریدم. I went to the market (and) bought fruits.

Subordinate sentences

When the action in the second part of the sentence is somehow dependent on the action in the first part or if the first action is done ‘in order’ that the second action is possible, the two sentences can follow each other without a conjunction; however, the verb in the second or ‘subordinate clause’ is in the *subjunctive*:

به کتابخانه می روم درس بخوانم. I am going to the library to study (lit. that I may study *or* in order to study).

به ایران رفته اند فامیلشان را ببینند. They have gone to Iran to see their family.

In the last two sentences the subject of the verb is one and the same person. However, if the subjects (agents) of the two part-sentences are different people, a conjunction such as **که** *ke*, or **تا** *tā* ('in order') is used:

این کتاب ها را آوردند تا من به شما بدهم. They brought these books so that I give them to you (*or* in order that I give them to you).

درِ اتاق را باز کردم که صدای ما را بهتر بشنود. I opened the door (of the room) so that he could hear us better.

However, **که** and **تا** can, of course, be used in sentences where the subject does not change, so the first examples will be:

به کتابخانه می روم که درس بخوانم.
به ایران رفته اند تا فامیلشان را ببینند.

Temporal sentences: uses of 'when' که

که *ke* 'that, when, where' is used in the following sentences, in a similar way to the English use:

سه سال پیش بود که به انگلستان آمدیم. It was three years ago that we came to England.

در تهران بود که با این نویسنده آشنا شدند. It was in Tehran where they met this writer.

آنقدر خسته بودم که شام نخوردم و زود خوابیدم. I was so tired that I did not eat any supper and went to bed early.

هوا آنقدر سرد نیست که پالتو بپوشیم. The weather is not too cold for us to wear a winter coat (*lit.* that we wear a winter coat).

به خانه رسیدم که بابک تلفن زد. I got home when Babak telephoned.

Relative clause sentences with 'who, which' که

The nearest examples to the relative clause as it is understood in English are sentences that effectively select one person, place or unit from a wider selection. There is no separate equivalent of the English relative pronouns 'who' or 'which' and instead **که** is used. The sentences are constructed in a remarkably similar way to the English relative clause. However, every sentence must start according to one of the following patterns:

... **ی + که** ... antecedent (1)

... **ی + را + که** ... antecedent (2)

Look at these examples:

مردی که دیروز به خانه ما آمد، ایرانی است.

The man who came to our house yesterday is Iranian.

The 'antecedent' here is **مرد** 'the man' so the pattern will be:

← **مرد + ی + که**

دختران جوانی که کنار پنجره نشسته اند در کوچه ما زندگی می کنند.

(دختران جوان + ی + که) The young girls who are sitting by the window live in our street.

کتابی را که علی خرید دربارهٔ قالیهای ایرانیست.

(کتاب + ی + را + که) The book that Ali bought is about Persian carpets. (Note: The verb in the first clause is transitive.)

لطفاً نامه ای را که به خواهرم نوشته ام پست کنید.

Please post the letter that I have written to my sister.

The exceptions to this rule are when the antecedent is a proper noun, i.e. a name or a pronoun or a noun followed by a suffixed pronoun (such as 'my friend' **دوست من** or **دوستم**). In this case, the **ی** is not added to the antecedent:

مریم که طبقه بالا زندگی می کند آشپز خیلی خوبی است.

Maryam who lives upstairs is a very good cook.

Adverbial conjunctions

as long as	تا وقتیکه
as soon as	همینکه
because	چونکه
despite the fact that	با اینکه - با وجودیکه
just as, as	همانطوریکه
since	از وقتیکه - از زمانیکه
when	وقتیکه - موقعیکه - زمانیکه
whenever	هر وقتیکه
where	جاییکه
wherever	هر جاییکه
whichever	هر کدامیکه
while	در حالیکه
whoever	هر کس که OR هر کسیکه

Conditional sentences in Persian

Conditional sentences in Persian are introduced by the word **اگر** *agar* 'if'. The part of the sentence that contains the 'if' clause is known technically as the *protasis*. The section of the sentence that contains the 'if' clause normally precedes the section of the sentence that deals with the consequence of the condition, which is known as the *apodosis*, but we will refer to the two components of a conditional sentence as the 'if clause' and the 'subsequent' clause.

In English, it is not unusual to place the section that contains the word 'if' in the second part of the sentence and say, for example: 'I'll come to your party *if* I can get a lift.' In Persian, however, it is very unusual *not* to

start a conditional sentence with the word 'if', that is **اگر** *agar*.

Conditional sentences are divided into two groups:

- 1 Sentences that offer *possible conditions*
- 2 Sentences that offer *impossible conditions*.

Possible conditions

The following table demonstrates the tense or mood of verbs that are needed in each of the two clauses or sections of a conditional sentence, depending on whether the condition applies to a time in the *past*, *present* or *future*.

Verb in 'if' clause (protasis)	Subsequent clause (apodosis)	Type of condition
Present subjunctive or simple past* <i>see notes</i>	Present or future	Conditionals referring to future
Present indicative** <i>see notes</i>	Present or future	Conditionals referring to present
Past subjunctive	Present or future	Conditionals referring to past

* If the action in the 'if clause' is a single action and takes place before the action in the main or 'subsequent' clause then *simple past* is used in the 'if' clause.

اگر مریم را دیدم به او می گویم.
If I see Maryam I will tell her.

We can equally use present subjunctive in the 'if' clause of this same example:

اگر مریم را ببینم به او می گویم.

** With the verb 'to be', although the present indicative can be used (e.g. هست or هستیم) it is quite common to use the present subjunctive of 'to be', such as باشم or باشیم in the 'if clause' too.

Examples of possible conditionals in future, present and past

Future

اگر به منزل علی بروید، من هم می روم/خواهم رفت.

If you go to Ali's house, I shall go also.
(The subjunctive is used when the outcome is quite likely.)

اگر به منزل علی رفتید، من هم می روم/خواهم رفت.

If you go to Ali's house, I will go too.

(The use of simple past means that I will only go if you do go to Ali's house.)

اگر قیمت خانه در لندن ارزان بشود، یک آپارتمان در غرب لندن می خرم.

If property prices come down in London I'll buy a flat in West London.

Present

اگر دارید شام می خورید، بعداً تلفن می زنم.

If you are having (eating) supper, I'll call later.

اگر بچه ها سر و صدا می کنند، بگویید ساکت شوند.

If the children are making a lot of noise, tell them to keep quiet.

Note: In this last sentence, the use of the imperative 'tell them' means that the second verb in the subsequent clause, 'keep quiet', has to be in the subjunctive:

اگر این کتاب را دوست دارید آن را به شما می دهم.

If you like this book, I'll give it to you.

اگر خواب است، او را بیدار نکنید.

Don't wake him up if he is asleep.

Usually, the present subjunctive of 'to be' is used in conditions in the present time.

Past

اگر علی خبر را نشنیده باشد، به او می گویم/خواهم گفت.

If Ali hasn't heard the news (yet or already) I will tell him.

Note: For conditionals referring to the past, where the English uses the future perfect tense in the subsequent clause, the Persian uses the perfect, also known as the past narrative tense:

اگر تا به حال به خانه ما آمده باشند حتماً گربه ام را دیده اند.

If they have ever (lit. up to now) been to our house they will have surely seen my cat.

Impossible conditionals

Impossible conditions, whether relating to the past or present take the imperfect (past continuous) in both clauses:

اگر می توانستم، حتماً می آمدم. I would have come if I could. (or If I could come I would (but I cannot).)

اگر زودتر می رفتید، به اتوبوس می رسیدید.
If you had gone earlier, you would have caught the bus.

اگر جوانتر بود، تا صبح می رقصید.
If he had been younger he would have danced till morning. (or He would dance till morning if he were younger (but he is not).)

Pluperfect (or remote past tense, as it is also known) can also be used in both clauses of an impossible condition, but this is usually confined to events relating to the past. Use of this tense means that we refer to the *possibility* of an event in the past which in fact did not happen because it *could not*:

اگر تندتر رفته بودیم به اتوبوس رسیده بودیم.
If we had gone faster we would have caught the bus.

اگر در را قفل کرده بود، دزد نیامده بود.

If he had locked the door, thieves wouldn't have come or, combining the imperfect and the pluperfect:

اگر در را قفل کرده بود، دزد نمی آمد.

Past subjunctive

Past subjunctive = present subjunctive of 'to be' + past participle forms of the main verb.

Subjunctive present of 'to be':

باشم باشیم

باشی باشید

باشد باشند

Reminder: Past participle = ه / ه + past stem, e.g.

رفته، خورده، گفته، آمده، زندگی کرده

Spoken versus written language

If you eavesdrop on a conversation between two Persian speakers, or listen to any informal programme on the radio or television, then you will soon realize that spoken Persian is quite different from the written language. This is, of course, true of any language, especially of the vernacular of the urban population living in big cities. However, the differences between the spoken and written Persian are nothing as drastic as the differences between colloquial and written Arabic, for example. The most significant differences, apart from the accent of the speakers, are contained in pronunciation of certain vowels and verb endings. This is invariably done based on rules (of a sort) and so can be learnt. However, nothing will aid the learning process as much as some time spent listening to the colloquial conversations of native speakers or radio plays, comedies and chat shows where you will hear colloquial Persian being used.

The grammar of colloquial Persian is really not very different from that of the written language. However, the spoken everyday language is full of local colour and flavour and the presence of many regional accents and dialects makes it that much more difficult for learners of Persian to follow. It is just as mind boggling trying to work out what a Cockney taxi driver says as it is to bargain at a stall in the Tehran bazaar. However, there are certain grammatical rules that can help.

First of all, the sentence order is more arbitrary in colloquial Persian than it is in the written language. For instance, it is not uncommon to start the sentence with the verb as in the following example:

Written: دیشب به سینما رفتم. Last night I went to the cinema.

Spoken: دیشب رفتم سینما.

The spoken Persian sentence order is that much closer to the subject–verb–object of some European languages such as English. It is worth noting that this order is most common with intransitive verbs, i.e. verbs that do not take the direct object marker ^{را} *rā*.

The other significant difference between the spoken and written Persian is the way in which verbs are pronounced, especially verbs whose present stem ends or begins with a vowel. The verb ‘to be’, in the present tense, is used mainly in its short forms. However, in spoken Persian the third person singular of this

form is pronounced as just a final vowel *e* after consonants and as the letter ^س *s* after vowels *a* and *ā* and sometimes *u*:

بزرگ است ← بزرگه	سرد است ← سرده
ایرانی است ← ایرانیه	خوب است ← خوبه
مال ما است ← مال ماس	اینجا است (اینجاست) ← اینجاس
	خانه است ← خونس

The following patterns should give you some idea of the spoken verbal forms. Compare the written with the spoken style. The asterisks denote the *unchanged* forms:

رفتن 'to go'

رفتن 'to go'

Present tense		Simple past	
pl.	sing.	pl.	sing.
می رویم ← می ریم	می روم ← می رم	رفتیم ← رفتیم*	رفتم ← رفتم*
می روید ← می رین	می روی ← می ری	رفتید ← رفتید	رفتی ← رفتی*
می روند ← می رن	می رود ← می ره	رفتند ← رفتند	رفت ← رفت*

As you see the changes in the past tense verbs are quite minor, however, *every one* of the six cases of the present tense of the verb 'to go' is pronounced differently. The same applies to the subjunctive form of the verb:

pl.	sing.
بِرویم ← بَریم	بِروم ← بَرم
بِروید ← بَرین	بِروی ← بَری
بِروند ← بَرن	بِرود ← بَره

گفتن:

Look at the present tense forms of the verb 'to say'

Subjunctive		Present tense	
pl.	sing.	pl.	sing.
بگوییم ← بگیم	بگویم ← بگم	می گوییم ← می گیم	می گم ← می گم
بگویند ← بگین	بگویی ← بگی	می گویند ← می گین	می گی ← می گی
بگویند ← بگن	بگوید ← بگه	می گویند ← می گن	می گه ← می گه

The past tense forms are the same as in 'to go', where only the second and third person plurals change:

they said **گفتند** ← **گفتن** you (pl.) said **گفتین** ← **گفتید**

Other examples:

آمدن 'to come'

Present		Past	
pl.	sing.	pl.	sing.
می آییم ← می یایم	می آیم ← می یام	آمدیم ← اومدیم	آمدَم ← اومدَم
می آیید ← می یاین	می آیی ← می یای	آمدید ← اومدید	آمدِی ← اومدِی
می آیند ← می یان	می آید ← می یاد	آمدند ← اومدند	آمد ← اومد

دادن 'to give'

Present	
pl.	sing.
می دهیم ← می دیم	می دهَم ← می دیَم
می دهید ← می دین	می دهی ← می دی
می دهند ← می دن	می دهد ← می ده

گذاشتن 'to allow' or 'to place'

Present	
pl.	sing.
می گذاریم ← می نازیم	می گذارَم ← می نازَم
می گذارید ← می نازین	می گذاری ← می نازی
می گذارند ← می نازن	می گذارد ← می نازه

The present stem of the infinitive 'to want' **خواستن** changes from **خواه** *khāh* to **خوا** *khā*. The conjugation follows the pattern of 'to come'. The present stem of 'to know' **دانستن** changes from **دان** *dān* to **دون** *dun* and its past stem changes from **توانست** *tavānest*, to **تونست** *tunest*; the verb is then conjugated as the verbs

seen earlier. In spoken Persian, the present tense stem of the verb ‘to sit’ **نشستن** *neshastan* loses its initial *n* and becomes **شین** *shin* instead of **نشین** *neshin*.

Nouns also undergo some changes. Usually, but not always, the long vowel *ā* preceding an *m* or an *n*, changes to a long vowel *u*:

خانه ← خونه نان ← نون ایرانی ← ابرونی آن ← اون مهمان ← مهمون
حمام ← حموم تمام ← تموم بادام ← بادوم کدام ← کدوم

The numeral ‘one’ **یک** *yek* changes to **یه** *ye* if it comes before a noun and is on its own:

یک روز ← یه روز یک پسر ← یه پسر یک اتاق ← یه اتاق

However, it stays the same in number combinations and after nouns:

چهل و یک، صد و بیست و یک، ساعت یک بعد از ظهر

And finally, the direct object marker, or postposition **را** *rā*, also changes depending on whether it follows a vowel or a consonant. After vowels, **را** becomes **رو** *ro* with a short *o* vowel. After consonants it becomes a mere short vowel **و** *o*:

میوه را **را** *mive rā* ← میوه **رو** *mive ro* او را **را** *u rā* ← او **رو** *u ro*
آقا را ← آقا **رو**
آن را ← اونو (اون + و) **و** *uno* این را ← اینو **و** *ino* من را ← منو **و** *mano*
کتاب را ← کتاب **و** *ketābo*

مگر *magar*, meaning ‘but’ (used with a negative question expecting the answer ‘yes’ or with an affirmative question expecting the answer ‘no’), also becomes **مگه** *mage* in spoken Persian:

مگه نگفتم (But) didn’t I tell you?

Grammar formulas

Before using the formulas make sure you recognize some of the basic terminology: e.g. *past stem* is formed by removing the *-an* (ن) from the end of the infinitive; *present stem* is formed by dropping the complete ending of the regular verb (these are *دن یدن تن*) or consulting the present stem table supplied. Also, don't forget that there are only five subject endings for all past tense verbs: however, present tenses have one extra ending which is for the third person singular, making it a total of six. Finally, remember that with compound verbs you only conjugate the verb element and then put the noun or preposition component of it at the beginning.

Three verbs have been used in the grammar formulas that follow. These are:

رَفْتَن 'to go', irregular single verb; past stem: رَفَت, present stem: رَو

کتاب خواندن 'to read books', regular compound verb; past stem: (کتاب) خواند, present stem: (کتاب) خوان

زندگی کردن 'to live', irregular compound verb; past stem: (زندگی) کرد, present stem: (زندگی) کُن

Present tense

1 Present indicative	mi (می) + present stem + subject endings*
می روم (irregular) I go or I'll go	می + رو + م
می کتاب می خوانی (regular) you read (a book)	می + خوان + ی
می زندگی می کنند (irregular) they live	می + کُن + ند
*Subject endings for the present tense are:	
م	یم
ی	یدی
د	ند

2 <i>Present progressive</i>	appropriate present form of 'to have'* + <i>mi</i> (می) + present stem + subject endings
دارم می روم I am just coming	دارم + می + روم
داری کتاب می خوانی you are reading (a book)	داری + می + خوان + ی
دارند زندگی می کنند they are living	دارند + می + کن + ند
داریم دارم* دارید داری دارند دارد	

3 <i>Imperative*</i>	<i>be</i> (ب) + present stem + subject endings (only for 2nd person plural [ید])
برو go! (singular)	ب + رو (but unusual to say <i>bero</i> , more common to say <i>boro</i>)
بروید go! (plural)	ب + رو + ید
* There are only two forms: second person singular or second person plural.	

4 <i>Present subjunctive</i> ¹	<i>be</i> (ب) + present stem + subject endings
بروم (that) I may go	ب + رو + م
کتاب بخوانی (that) you may read a book	ب + خوان + ی
زندگی بکنند or زندگی کنند they may live	ب + کن + ند ²

- 1 The present subjunctive usually appears in conjunction with another verb such as 'I hope' or 'we wish' or can appear with a modal such as 'they want', 'you may' or 'she can'.
- 2 The compound subjunctive, with a few minor exceptions, doesn't need the *be*.

Past tense

1 <i>Simple past</i> رَفْتَم I went کتاب خواندی you read (a book) زندگی کردند they lived	past stem + subject endings* رَفْت + مَ خواند + ی کَرَد + نَد
*Subject endings for the past tenses are: مَ یَم ی یِ - نَد	

2 <i>Imperfect</i> (<i>past continuous</i>) مِی رَفْتَم I used to go کتاب می خواندی you were reading (a book) or you used to read (a book) زندگی می کردند they used to live	<i>mi</i> (می) + past stem + subject endings مِی + رَفْت + مَ می + خواند + ی می + کَرَد + نَد
---	--

3 <i>Past progressive</i> ¹ داشتم می رَفْتَم I was <i>about</i> to go or just <i>when</i> I was leaving or I was just going <i>when</i> ... داشتم می خواندی you were reading your book <i>when</i> ... or just <i>when</i> you were reading your book ... داشتند زندگی می کردند they were living there <i>when</i> ...	appropriate past form of 'to have' ² + <i>mi</i> (می) + past stem + subject endings داشتم + می + رَفْت + مَ داشتم + می + خواند + ی داشتند + می + کَرَد + نَد
---	---

1 This gives the sense of an ongoing action that is interrupted or immediately followed by another action.

2 داشتم داشتیم
داشتم داشتید
داشت داشتند

4 <i>Past participle*</i>	past stem + final short vowel 'e' ه / هـ
رَفْتِه gone (missed)	رَفْت + هـ
کتاب خوانده well read	خواند + ه
زندگی کرده lived (experienced)	کرد + ه
* The past participle on its own could be an adjective or a noun too.	

5 <i>Present perfect</i>	past participle of the verb + appropriate short form of present tense 'to be'*
رَفْتِه اَم I have gone	رَفْتِه + اَم
کتاب خوانده ای you have read books	خوانده + ای
زندگی کرده اند they have lived	کرده + اند
ايم اَم*	
ايد ای	
آند آست	

6 <i>Pluperfect</i>	past participle of the verb + appropriate past tense of the verb 'to be'*
رَفْتِه بودم I had gone	رَفْتِه + بودم
کتاب خوانده بودی you had read (a book)	خوانده + بودی
زندگی کرده بودند they had lived	کرده + بودند
بوديم بودم*	
بوديد بودی	
بودند بود	

7 Past subjunctive	past participle of main verb + appropriate present subjunctive form of 'to be'*
رَفْتِه باشم I might have gone	رَفْتِه + باشم
کتاب خوانده باشی you might have read (a book)	خوانده + باشی
زندگی کرده باشند they might have lived	کرده + باشند
باشم باشیم	
باشی باشید	
باشند باشند	

Future tense

Future	appropriate present form of the modal 'will'* + past stem of main verb
خواهم رفت I will/shall go	خواهم + رفت
کتاب خواهی خواند you will/shall read a book	خواهی + خواند
زندگی خواهی کرد they will/shall live	خواهند + کرد
* The future tense is, technically, a verb formed from the past tense. Remember you can use the present tense for the future too. Remember no <i>mi</i> می:	
خواهم خواهیم	
خواهی خواهید	
خواهد خواهند	

Passive voice

Usually only transitive verbs such as 'to eat', 'to see' and 'to buy' can have a passive form. Intransitive verbs do not have a passive form. There are two ways of forming the passive verb: (1) formation with single verbs;

(2) formation with compound verbs. In either case, we need the help of the verb *shodan* شدن 'to become' in order to create a new compound, passive verb.

Passive of single verbs = past participle of main verb + **شدن**

For example, the passive of the single verb 'to eat' will be 'to be eaten'. 'to eat' is **خوردن**. Past participle of **خوردن** is **خورده**. 'To be eaten' is therefore: **خورده شدن** = **شدن** + **خورده**; 'to close' or 'to

shut' is **بستن**; 'to be closed' or 'to be shut' is therefore **بسته شدن**.

من در را بستم (active) I closed the door

در بسته شد (passive) the door was shut

Various tenses of the passive compound verbs are formed like any compound verb by using the general rules

listed earlier. E.g. **در بسته شده است** 'the door has been shut' or **در دارد بسته می شود** 'the door is about to be shut', **ممکن است در بسته بشود** 'the door may be about to be shut' (*subjunctive*).

Passive of compound verbs

In transitive compound verbs that have **کردن** *kardan* 'to do' as their verb part, **کردن** is simply changed to **شدن**. E.g. **خاموش کردن** 'to switch off' or 'to turn off' becomes **خاموش شدن** 'to be switched off' or 'to be turned off'. Similarly, **فراموش کردن** 'to forget' becomes **فراموش شدن** 'to be forgotten'; **درست کردن** 'to make' or 'to mend' becomes **درست شدن** 'to be made' or 'to be mended'.

Some compound forms, however, have their own special passive. For example, the verbal element of most compounds ending with **دادن** or **زدن** is changed to **خوردن** and **گرفتن** (or **یافتن**) respectively:

گول زدن 'to deceive' becomes **گول خوردن** 'to be deceived'; **کتک زدن** 'to hit, to slap' becomes **کتک خوردن** 'to be hit, to be slapped'.

However, **سامان دادن** 'to sort someone out, to help' becomes **سامان گرفتن** or **سامان یافتن** 'to be

sorted out or helped', **پرورش دادن** 'to nurture' becomes **پرورش یافتن** 'to be nurtured';

انجام دادن 'to do, to complete' becomes **انجام یافتن** (or sometimes **انجام شدن**).

The odd one out is **شکست دادن** 'to defeat' which becomes **شکست خوردن** 'to be defeated'.

These verbs are then conjugated like any other compound verb.

Remember, passive verbs *never* have a specific direct object and, therefore, never take the postposition را *rā*.

Negative

The negative of all verbs is formed by prefixing the negative sign نَ *na* or نِ *ne* to the verb. If the verb form contains the continuous or present tense prefix of می *mi*, then the negative is formed by نِ *ne*. Otherwise, all other forms are put into the negative by the prefix نَ *na*. Remember to use a buffer if the negative prefix has to latch onto a verbal element that starts with a vowel.

The only exception to this rule is the formation of the negative of subjunctive and imperative verbs in Persian. The subjunctive and imperative verbs begin with the prefix بَ *be*. The negative of these verbs is formed by replacing the بَ *be* prefix with the negative نَ *na* prefix.

Examples:

رَفْتَم I went → نَرَفْتَم I did not go

آمدم I came → نیامدم (note the buffer) I did not come

زندگی کردند they lived → زندگی نکردند they did not live

می آمدید you were coming → نمی آمدید you were not coming

خورده است he has eaten → نخورده است he has not eaten

می خرد we had studied → درس نخوانده بودیم we had not studied

نمی خرد she buys → نمی خرد she does not buy

(شاید) نروند they (may) go → (شاید) نروند they (may not) go (notice *na* has replaced *be*)

نده! give (it)! → نده! don't give!

ننشینید! sit down (pl.)! → ننشینید! don't sit down!

Note: Although it is not necessary to use the subjunctive **نَ** with compound verbs, the use of negative **نَ** with compound subjunctive is compulsory:

دیده باشند they may have seen → ندیده باشند they may not have seen

خواهیم گفت we shall say → نخواهیم گفت we shall not say

.....

Key to the exercises

Writing, alphabet and pronunciation

Exercise 1

۱ بابا ۲ بازار ۳ پرستار ۴ آواز ۵ ماشین ۶ هزار ۷ مرجان
۸ ناظم ۹ اژدر ۱۰ مقیاس ۱۱ استراحت ۱۲ اجاق ۱۳ وراثت
۱۴ کوچک ۱۵ خیابان ۱۶ گاری ۱۷ موقع ۱۸ سوسک
۱۹ لاکپشت ۲۰ موشک ۲۱ اصفهان ۲۲ ضرر ۲۳ ظهر
۲۴ طاووس ۲۵ یواشکی ۲۶ کتابخانه ۲۷ همسایه ۲۸ قهوه
۲۹ رادار ۳۰ سفیر

Exercise 2

pā – pāru – sup – kāshi – ketāb – kuche – mikh – sābun – maryam – āqā – shirāz – afghān – emruz – izad – ashk – tāqche – kushesh – ārāmgāh – kāghaz – esfahān – ijāb – ‘oghāb

Exercise 3

۱ فرد ۲ پلنگ ۳ بشقاب ۴ آچار ۵ آتش ۶ واجب ۷ نمک ۸ کوچک ۹ اکبر ۱۰ ظهر ۱۱ گوشت ۱۲
بیمارستان ۱۳ قهوه ۱۴ زرد ۱۵ هوا ۱۶ امشب ۱۷ ایرلند ۱۸ شیرین ۱۹ دختر ۲۰ بیست ۲۱
خاله ۲۲ ۲۳ هدف ۲۴ ۲۵ عمو ۲۶ شما

Unit 1

Exercise 1

صُبْحِ بَخِيرِ خانم، سَلامِ أَحْمَدِ جان، سَلام، عَصْرِ بَخِيرِ آقا
خدا حافظِ مَریم، شَبِ بَخِيرِ بابک، سَفَرِ بَخِيرِ آقاي شَمس

Exercise 2

۱ صُبْحِ بَخِيرِ مِهری، خوش آمدی! ۲ بله، لُطفاً، بی زَحْمَتِ چای.
۳ ببخشید بابک. ۴ نه مِرسی، پری. ۵ سَفَرِ بَخِيرِ رِضا و مُتَشَكِّرِم.
خواهش می‌کنم.

(a)

(b) 1 Hello sir, if you please. 2 One tea and a Danish pastry, please. 3
Forgive me, madam, I am very sorry. 4 No thanks, dear Babak. 5 You are
welcome, goodbye (*lit.* God keep you).

Exercise 3

۱ یکشنبه - سه‌شنبه - پنجشنبه - جمعه ۲ بهار - تابستان -
زمستان ۳ آذر - تیر - مرداد - شهریور ۴ فروردین -
تیر ۳۱ ۵

Unit 2

Exercise 1

۱۶ ۱۲ ۲۵ ۳۴ ۷ ۰ ۱۰۷ ۳۵۸ ۸۱۹ ۴۸ ۹۸۷ ۱۰۴۶ ۲۶۹۰۳

۲

چهل و دو یازده هشت سیزده، چهل شصت و نه

یکصد و پنجاه و یک دویست یکهزار و ششصد و بیست و پنج

3 7, 12, 23, 1998, 591, 183, 9, 212

4 سه کتاب یک پسر هشت ماشین دو مرد چهارده روز

Exercise 2

1

- یازدهم - بیست و سوم - چهل و یکم - صد و بیست و پنجم - نود و چهارم
دوم - ششم - دهم

2 fourth, 26th, third night, 1,000th, 11th day of Farvardin, 1st Khordad, 31st.

Exercise 3

1 - خواهران، خواهرها - ماشینها - پسران، پسرها - کتابخانهها -
پنجرهها - روزها - استادان، استاداها - زنان، زنها

2 - شهرها - پسران - گلهها - گریهها - زنان، زنها - روزها -
تابستانها - قلمها - ترنهای - جوانان، جوانها - عاقلان -
سه خواهر - ده پرنده - دو ساعت

Unit 3

Exercise 1

صبح بخیر، عصر بخیر مریم، خیلی متشکرم رضا، خدانگهدار علی،
سفر بخیر، خانمها و آقایان، شب بخیر

Unit 4

Exercise 1

۱ این قالیچه گرانست. ۲ آن اتاق خیلی بزرگ نیست ولی تمیزست.
۳ آنها در اتوبوسند. ۴ آن دخترها خواننده نیستند. ۵ شما با
مریم دوستید؟

Exercise 2

۱ این هلو خوشمزه است. ۲ مریم نقاش است. ۳ شما خسته هستید
/ خسته اید. ۴ من جوانم / جوان هستم. ۵ ما در تهران هستیم.

Exercise 3

۱ نه، آن پسر اسکاتلندی نیست. ۲ نه، ما با ایرج دوست نیستیم.
۳ نه، تو ورزشکار نیستی. ۴ نه، آنها خیلی خسته نیستند. ۵ نه، ما
نقاش نیستیم.

Exercise 4

مریم جان، سلام!	ب
به! بابک جان، سلام، صبح بخیر. چطوری؟	م
مرسی، قربانت، بد نیستم، تو چطوری؟ خوبی؟	ب
خیلی خوبم، مرسی.	م
مریم جان تنهایی؟	ب
نه، بابک، با دوستم. با دوستم، یاسمن. یاسمن این بابکست. بابک نقاشست.	م
سلام.	ی
سلام، یاسمن خانم. خوشوقتم. شما ایرانیید؟	ب
بله من ایرانیم ولی مادرم روسست. شما اهل کجایی؟	ی
من شیرازیم. شما مثل مریم دانشجوید؟	ب
نه، من دانشجو نیستم، من عکاسم.	ی
به! به! چه خوب! مریم، امشب منزلی؟	ب
بله من و یاسمن امشب منزلیم.	م

Unit 5

Exercise 1

1- شُما، ایشان 2- تو 3- شما - ایشان 4- تو - او 5- شما، ایشان

Exercise 2

(a) 1 large garden 2 Maryam's Persian book 3 Iranian man 4 my friend's daughters 5 delicious food 6 dark, cold night 7 London University *or* University of London 8 old house 9 china teapot of Babak's kind sister

(b)

۱ انگور شیرین ۲ دوستِ روسِ مریم ۳ ماشینِ آقایِ احمدی
۴ اتاقِ قشنگِ بزرگ ۵ قالیه‌های دستبافِ کاشان ۶ شهرِ تاریخی
قدیمی ۷ روزِ سردِ آفتابی ۸ همسایهٔ او ۹ چترِ سبزِ من
۱۰ مردانِ پیرِ مهربان

(c)

نام من علیست. من ایرانی هستم. من در تهران دانشجو هستم. این،
خواهرِ من مریم است. روزِ تولدِ مریم درِ سامبر است. برادرِ دوستِ
او همکلاسِ من است. اسم او مهرداد است. موی مهرداد قهوه‌ایست.
خانهٔ او در خیابانِ افشار است.

(d)

خانه گران غذای سرد میوه خوشمزه موی سیاه کفش
ناراحت صندلی راحت چشمِ سیاه هوای گرم موی طلایی
کفشِ ارزان گربه سیاه

Exercise 3

۱ مادرِ بزرگم ۹۲ ساله است. ۲ او دخترخالهٔ من است.
۳ عموی من دوستِ پدرِ توست. ۴ برادرِ ما پزشک (دکتر) است.
۵ خواهرشوهرِ آنها و خواهرِ ما امروز در لندن هستند.

Exercise 4

۱ برادرِ من - برادرش ۲ اَسبِ آنها - اَسبِشان ۳ خانۀ ما -
 خانۀ ما ۴ سگِ سیاهِ شما - سگِ سیاهِتان ۵ چترِ آنها -
 چترِشان ۶ دوستِ او - دوستش ۷ کتابِ تو - کتابتِ ۸ عموی
 مهربانِ من - عموی مهربانم ۹ مادرِ بزرگِ او - مادرِ بزرگش
 ۱۰ شَهرِ ما - شَهرِ ما

Exercise 5

1 hungry man 2 good weather 3 good, sunny weather 4 clever girl 5 young student 6 young Irish student 7
 sour lemon 8 open window 9 old house 10 these two open doors 11 open doors 12 these open (and) large
 doors 13 that pretty (and) white cat 14 green, sour apples 15 mother of those two boys 16 young mother of
 those two small boys 17 kind grand father 18 Shirazi sweet apples 19 green apple and sweet orange 20 warm
 day and cold night 21 country of Iran 22 British Isles 23 Tehran-Esfahan bus ticket 24 cities of Iran 25
 Parisian shops

Exercise 7

۱ برادرِ من - برادرِ من ۲ ماشینِ کوچکت - ماشینِ کوچکِ تو
 ۳ خانۀ بزرگِ گران ۴ اُتاقِ راحتِ او - اُتاقِ راحتِش ۵ فَنجانِ
 چایِ سرد ۶ قلمِ طلائیِ ما ۷ کفشِ سیاهِ ارزان ۸ سیبِ شیرینِ
 خوشمزه ۹ پسرِ جوانِ گرسنه ۱۰ کشورِ زیبایِ من

Unit 6

Exercise 1

- ۱ خانه آنها به مغازه نزدیکتر است. ۲ برادرِ مریم خیلی از برادرِ من بلندتر است. ۳ بلندترین (بلند-قدترین) دخترِ اتاق برزلی است. ۴ خانه او خیلی از خانه من بزرگتر است ولی باغ من بزرگتر است. ۵ آنها خیلی سختتر از تو کار می‌کنند. ۶ تو از ماریا بهتر فارسی حرف می‌زنی. - تو بهتر از ماریا فارسی حرف می‌زنی. ۷ امشب از دیشب گرمتر است. ۸ این بلندترین شب سال است. ۹ بهترین دوست من نزدیک پارک زندگی می‌کند. ۱۰ این فیلم خیلی طولانی است، طولانیتر از دکتر ژواگو.

Exercise 2

1 Today is warmer than yesterday, but it's still very cold. 2 My sister's youngest child is called Roya. 3 Does chicken (meat) or fish (meat) have less fat? 4 You got to the restaurant earlier than us. 5 Today he is feeling better than yesterday.

Exercise 3

تهران بزرگتر است یا اصفهان؟ لندن از تهران بزرگتر است ولی هوای تهران گرمتر است. خانه من به مرکز شهر نزدیکتر است ولی خانه افسانه نزدیکترین به پارک است. فیلم «خانه ای از ماسه و مه» خیلی خوب است، «بازگشت پادشاه» بهتر است ولی بهترین فیلم «مثل بکهام شوت بزن» است.

Exercise 4

مریم، چه لباس قشنگی!
Thank you, very kind of you. It's my sister's dress.
خواهرت از تو بزرگتر است یا کوچکتر؟
My sister is four years younger (*lit. smaller than me*). She is the youngest child in the family.

Unit 7

Exercise 1

- M Whose glasses are these?
 D Which glasses?
 M These sunglasses. Are they yours Dariush?
 D No, these glasses are not mine, they are Amir's. Whose books and key are these?
 M The books belong to my brother and the key is mine.
 D Where is your brother today? Why is he not here?
 M My brother is at Reza's house today.
 D Who is Reza?
 M Reza is my brother's colleague. Reza is a photographer.
 D Is your brother a photographer too?
 M No, my brother is a graphic artist.

Exercise 2

۱ اسم من ... مریم (for example) است. ۲ اسم فامیل من ...
 بهبودی (for example) است. ۳ خانه من در شمال لندن است.
 ۴ اسم مادرم مهری و اسم پدرم رازی است. ۵ تولد من آبان ۱۳۴۰
 است. ۶ من در تهران بدنیا آمدم. ۷ من روزها در یک کتابفروشی
 کار می‌کنم. ۸ نه، من دانشجو نیستم. ۹ من دو تا خواهر دارم ولی
 برادر ندارم. ۱۰ ساعت الآن ... دو و نیم بعد از ظهر (for example) است.

Unit 8

Exercise 1

۱ مریم و علی یک خانه کوچک خیلی قشنگ دارند. ۲ من غذای
 ژاپنی دوست ندارم ولی غذای لبنانی دوست دارم. ۳ فردا خیلی
 کار دارند. ۴ آیا در پاریس دوستی or دوستانی داری؟ ۵ زن
 برادرم شش دایی دارد.

Exercise 2

I have a small cottage in the mountains near the Caspian Sea. This cottage has neither electricity nor a telephone, but has very beautiful views (lit. its views are very beautiful). There is a spring near the cottage. This cottage has two or three chairs, a wooden table, a large bed, a small kitchen and an open fireplace. This far-from-the-city cottage is the best place for resting (or relaxation).

Exercise 3

۱ ما در ایران دو تا ماشین داشتیم. ۲ او در خانه‌اش در ترکیه یک اسب، دو تا گربه، جوجه و خرگوش داشت. ۳ آنها چندین دوست در تهران داشتند. ۴ دیروز چقدر پول داشتی؟ ۵ من تلویزیون نداشتم ولی یک رادیوی قدیمی داشتم.

Exercise 4

۱ داشتم. ۲ شما ۳ او ۴ نداشتم. ۵ داشتند؟

Exercise 5

کشوری شبی پرنده‌ای میزی صبحی اُستادی کوهی
هفته‌ای مردی کتابی آقای همسایه‌ای دوستانی پای
خوابگاهی قلمی جزیره‌هایی گربه‌ای صندلی‌ای راهی
شهری دری ماهی‌ای اسب‌هایی روزی ستاره‌ای خانه‌ای

Exercise 6

مردی خانه‌ای پسرهایی گربه‌ای ستاره‌ای گلی شهرهایی
میوه‌هایی بچه‌ای

Unit 10

Exercise 1

۱ رفتید - ۲ رفتند - ۳ خوردیم - ۴ آمدی - ۵ دیدیم -
۶ بودند - ۷ ماندم - ۸ داشتیم - ۹ بود - ۱۰ رسیدید؟

Exercise 2

۱ دیشب به خانه ما آمد. ۲ سه سال در شیراز بودم. ۳ دو روز
پیش به لندن رسیدیم. ۴ مریم و علی روز شنبه یک فیلم خیلی
خوب دیدند. ۵ آیا امروز صبح چیزی از بازار خریدی؟

Unit 11

Exercise 1

۱ غذایمان را خیلی تند خوردیم. ۲ آنها اغلب نامه‌های تشکر
قشنگی می‌نوشتند. ۳ خوشبختانه همسایه خیلی مهربانی بود.
۴ همیشه مریم را صبح‌ها می‌دیدم. ۵ او معمولاً با خانواده‌اش در
آن خانه بزرگ زندگی می‌کرد. ۶ ما ماه پیش به شیراز رفتیم ولی
متأسفانه هوا خوب نبود. ۷ ماریا قشنگ می‌رقصد. ۸ آنها آهسته
صحبت کردند و ما خوب فهمیدیم. ۹ آیا آنها را فوراً صدا زدید؟
۱۰ خوشبختانه من یک چتر داشتم.

Exercise 2

1 I suddenly woke up at 3 a.m. and came out of the room quietly.

خیلی 3 Luckily, they got to the airport quickly. 2 He was very worried. آهسته ناگهان - ساعت سه صبح
هنوز 5 We came home very late last night. خوشبختانه - زود 4 He is still in London.
فقط 7 I like Persian food, especially broad bean rice. دیشب - خیلی دیر 6 Have you only got \$10?
آنوقت شب 9 Your letter arrived at least three days ago. 8 All the restaurants were closed at that time of night.
نزدیک Our house is close to the park. اقل - سه روز پیش

Unit 12

Exercise 1

۱ مریم در آن اتاق خوابیده است. ۲ ما هیچوقت به ایران نرفته ایم.
۳ شما قبلاً در آفریقا زندگی کرده اید. ۴ دوستانشان از پاریس
رسیده اند or آمده اند. ۵ من در این هتل کوچک مانده ام.

Exercise 2

1 He hasn't been to the office since yesterday. 2 I have been in the park since this morning. 3 I have cooked chicken and vegetables for supper. 4 How long have you lived in Iran? 5 They have gone (been) to Esfahan three times.

Exercise 3

الو منزلِ آقای اَفسار؟ / شما نسرین خانم هستید؟ من پدرامم. /
خیلی ممنون، خویم، بد نیستم. خانم هم حالشون خوبست. الان
فرانسه است، پیشِ مادرش است. / برای یک هفته رفته است. چهار
ماه است که مادرش را ندیده. بردارش هم از آمریکا آمده است. همه
فامیل حالا آنجا جمع هستند. / ببخشید، علی منزل است؟ /
خداحافظِ شما نسرین خانم. به امید دیدار انشالله.

Unit 13

Exercise 1

۱ او در خانه ما در شیراز زندگی می‌کرد. ۲ من صبح‌ها درس
می‌خواندم و عصرها کار می‌کردم. ۳ تو غذای ما را دوست نداری
ولی جای ما را دوست داری. ۴ امروز صبح به رادیو گوش کردیم.
۵ فکر کردند امروز دوشنبه است. ۶ تو وقتیکه مریم را دیدی
تَعَجَب کردی. ۷ او تصمیم دشواری گرفت. ۸ آیا ماشین را درست
کردی؟ ۹ از سه‌شنبه تا حالا کار نکرده‌ام. ۱۰ امیر و مریم در
عروسی پری آواز خواندند.

Exercise 2

Three years ago we used to live in Bordeaux, in France. My father was working in a commercial bank and my mother taught piano at the local school. I met several Iranian boys and girls at school. Every weekend we used to either ride bicycles in the side streets or swim in the pool. The mother of one of the Iranian boys used to make us supper every Sunday night. I like Persian food very much. However, my father's job in France came to an end and this summer we returned to London.

Exercise 3

نخیر. شنبه صبح تمامش کار کردم، بعد شب به منزلِ پسرعمویم کنار دریاچه رفتم. / نه، حدود ساعتِ نه و نیم رسیدم. شام خوردم و کمی صحبت کردیم و رفتیم خوابیدیم. / یکشنبه صبح رفتیم به یک بازارِ محلی و بعد گُلف بازی کردیم. من نزدیکِ ساعتِ شش برگشتم منزل. / پسرعمویم همیشه آنجا زندگی می کند.

Unit 14

Exercise 1

۱ صدایش را شنیدم. ۲ دوستم این کتابها را از مغازه خرید.
۳ بسته را به منزلمان آوردند. ۴ این گلها را به او داد. ۵ مادرِ
مریم را دیروز ندیدم. ۶ همه آن سیبها را خوردم. ۷ کمی غذا
برای او بردم. ۸ آنرا به برادرش داد. ۹ دیروز تو را در نانوائی
دیدم. چه خریدی؟ ۱۰ این کتاب را نمی خواستی؟ ۱۱ دوستِ مرا
دیدي؟ ۱۲ من آنها را نمی شناسم. ۱۳ آیا اخبار را شنیده‌ای؟
۱۴ من آن یکی ماشین را می خواهم. ۱۵ کی این گلها را آورد؟
۱۶ آدرس شما را به شاگردها دادم. ۱۷ دیروز خوب غذا خوردم.
۱۸ دیروز در خانه خواهرت غذا خوردم. ۱۹ آن شکلات در یخچال
را خوردم. ۲۰ آیا فیلم را دوست داشتی؟

Exercise 2

Three years ago I met an Iranian girl at a party in London. Her name is Maryam. Maryam is a photographer and on Tuesdays and Wednesdays she works in a photographic studio. She travels a lot and I don't see her much. Yesterday, after a long time, I saw her at a party at my friend's house. After the usual exchange of niceties and how are you chitchat she said that she has moved (lit. changed) house and lives in West London now. She said that she loves her new flat. Maryam gave me her new address and telephone number. Maryam and her friend Omid have found this flat together. They have painted the walls, changed the wall-to-wall carpet, cleaned the kitchen and planted flowers in its small garden. The window in the bathroom was broken

and they have mended that too. Then, they brought Maryam's thing to the flat. Omid was also at the party and she introduced him to me. Maryam and Omid had not brought their car and I gave them a lift home after dinner.

Exercise 3

سلام خانم، صبح بخیر. من این کتاب را پنجشنبه پیش خریدم، برای یک دوستم بود ولی این کتاب را دارد. / بله. از همینجا خریدم. / بسیارخوب. دراین صورت آن را با این دو کتاب عوض میکنم. این کتاب درباره ایران را هم میخواهم. قیمتش چقدر است؟

Unit 15

Exercise 1

۱ من هر شنبه به خانه مادرم می‌روم و او را به سوپرمارکت می‌برم. ۲ او در یک آپارتمان بزرگ قشنگ با دو تا گربه زندگی می‌کند. ۳ ما هر روز صبح دخترخاله‌ات را توی اتوبوس می‌بینیم. ۴ آیا برای مریم یک نامه می‌نویسی؟ ۵ آنها روز چهارشنبه به مهمانی ما می‌آیند.

Exercise 2

نشست می‌نشینیم	آمدند می‌آیند	گفتم می‌گویم
نوشتند می‌نویسند	خوردیم می‌خوریم	گرفتید می‌گیرم
رفت می‌روید	خریدیم می‌خرید	ماندی می‌مانند
	آوردی می‌آوری	دیدم می‌بینم

Unit 17

Exercise 1

The shop of Cyrus's father-in-law

Cyrus's father-in-law has a greengrocer's and fruit shop. His shop is in Ferdosi Avenue. In front of the shop there is a narrow pavement and a (water) gutter. Several tall trees and a newspaper kiosk are also in front of the shop. On the right-hand side of the shop there is a patisserie and on the left-hand side there is a shoe shop. Opposite the shop, on the other side of the road, there is a hairdresser, a bank and a foreign language teaching college. Above the shop there is a doctor's surgery and behind the shop there is a petrol station. Cyrus's father-in-law works in this shop from early morning till night; however, he sometimes goes to a rice kebab restaurant near the cinema for lunch. Ferdosi Avenue is always busy. It is only quiet in the early morning. There are all sorts of shops in this street: bookshops, photographers, tailors, carpenters, clothes boutiques, jewellers, bakers, butchers, chemists and other shops. Cyrus's father-in-law sells all sorts of vegetables (herbs) and fruits in his shop: parsley, mint, spinach, garlic, pumpkin, onions, aubergines, tomatoes, potatoes, oranges, bananas, grapes, pomegranates, apples, peaches, pears and melon.

Exercise 2

۱ مریم دیشب به خانه ما آمد. ۲ ما با اتوبوس به خانه علی رفتیم. ۳ او گلدان را روی میز گذاشت. ۴ کفشهایش زیر میز است. ۵ این آخر هفته می‌خواهم پیش مادریزرگم بروم. ۶ کمی غذا در یخچال هست. ۷ فرم را با مداد پر نکن. ۸ برای تعطیلات (به) کجا می‌روی؟

Unit 18

Exercise 1

Mr Absent-minded: When Mr Absent-minded was leaving his house in the morning his wife gave him a letter and said: 'Make sure you post this letter today. It's a very important letter. Don't forget.' Mr Absent-minded, however, forgot what his wife had said and did not post the letter (lit. did not throw the letter into the letter box). When he was getting off his bus and rushing off to his office (lit. going to office by running) a gentleman suddenly tapped him gently on the shoulder and said: 'Don't forget the letter!' Mr Absent-minded was very surprised and put the letter in the postbox and went on towards his office. En route, a beautiful woman suddenly said to him: 'Sir, don't forget your letter.' This time Mr Absent-minded stopped and said in astonishment: 'Dear God! How do these people know that I have to post a letter? I posted it a few minutes

ago!' The woman laughed in response and said: 'In that case, please remove this note from your back.' On the note was written: 'Please tell my husband not to forget the letter.'

Exercise 2

۱ می‌خواهند شما را فردا شب ببینند. ۲ نمیتوانم امشب به کلاسِ فارسیم بروم. ۳ امیدواریم که تابستانِ آینده یک خانهٔ بزرگتر بخریم. ۴ او هم می‌خواست به شیراز سفر کند (سفر کند). ۵ لطفاً پیش از اینکه به منزلش بروید تلفن بکنید.

Unit 19

Exercise 1

۱ فردا شب شما را خواهم دید. ۲ آیا با اتوبوس مسافرت خواهند کرد یا با ترن؟ ۳ او هفتهٔ آینده این نامه را خواهد نوشت و آنرا به من خواهد داد. ۴ وقتی که از پاریس برگردند به ما تلفن خواهند زد. ۵ بزودی یک خانهٔ بزرگتر خواهیم خرید.

Exercise 2

1 I will go to Iran next week and will stay in Tehran for three months. 2 They will definitely write this letter this afternoon. 3 When will you go to your sister's house? 4 We will give your message to Babak. 5 In how many hours' time will you finish your work with the computer (*lit.* will your work finish with the computer)?

Exercise 3

سعی میکنم فرداشب آنرا تمام کنم، ولی نمیتوانم قول بدهم. شما فرداشب منزل هستید؟ / آن واقعاً کمک بزرگی خواهد بود. من حدود ساعت نه و نیم، بعداز شام میآیم بدمتون.

Unit 20

Exercise 1

۱ خواهرم پارسال به ایتالیا رفت و خیلی به او خوش گذشت. ۲ از این رنگ خوشم نمیآید ولی آن آبی قشنگ است. ۳ یادت رفت که دیروز به مریم تلفن بزنی. ۴ ما میخوایم اخبار ساعت ده را نگاهکنیم ولی من خیلی خوابم میآید. ۵ آنها توی ترن خوابشان بُرد و مناظر زیبا را ندیدند.

Exercise 2

1 They dislike (loathe) this part of the city. 2 Why do you always fall asleep at talks? 3 Whenever we go to Iran we have a lovely time. 4 I can't remember (it has slipped my mind) whether I have a dentist's appointment tomorrow or the day after. 5 He likes Persian music.

Exercise 3

بعله! من عاشق موسیقی ایرانی هستم. چطور مگر؟ / من حتماً میآیم. کنسرت کدام شبست؟ / یکدنیا ممنون. بعداز آن برویم یک رستوران خوب؟ یک رستوران ایرانی آن نزدیکیهاست. / بسیارخوب، پس من یک میز برای هشت نفر، برای ساعت ده و نیم رزرو میکنم.

Unit 21

There are books in which we can find the answers to different questions. We call these books dictionaries and encyclopaedias. In these books, phrases and names are printed in bold letters in alphabetical order and each one is given a detailed explanation in ordinary print. Encyclopaedias are usually textbooks in which we can find all sorts of scientific, literary, art, historical, geographic and other information. Some encyclopaedias are published in several volumes.

.....

Persian–English glossary

	الف	hello, how	احوالپرسی
water	آب	are you,	
pomegranate	آبِ آنار	exchange of	
juice		niceties	
they extract	آب می‌گیرند	last, in the end	آخر
the juice		the last	آخرین
fruit juice	آب میوه	office	اداره
cloud	ابر	manners,	آدب
eyebrow	ابرو	politeness	
cloudy	ابری	literary,	آدبی
silk	ابریشم	formal	
blue	آبی	prose	
apartment	آپارتمان	address	آدرس
room	اتاق	gradually,	آرام آرام
bedroom	اتاق خواب	'slowly,	
bus	اتوبوس	slowly',	
rent	اجاره	'calmly,	
to rent	اجاره کردن	calmly'	
they have	اجاره دادن	mausoleum	آرامگاه
rented out		beauty salon	آرایشگاه
permission	اجازه	cheap	ارزان
brick	آجر	maxim	آرمان
respect	احترام	informal yes,	آره
		'yup'	
		from, of,	از
		through	

since	از وقتیکه، از زمانیکه	mistake to make mistakes	اشتباه اشتباه کردن
to get married	ازدواج کردن	tears	اشک
experiment, test	آزمایش	familiar	آشنا
easy	آسان	to become acquainted	آشنا شدن
horse	اسب	information	اطلاعات
equipment, furniture	اسباب	often	اغلب
Spain	اسپانیا	sun	آفتاب
is	است	sunny	آفتابی
master, teacher	استاد	gentleman, sir	آقا
rest	استراحت	period of stay, residence	اقامت
to use, to benefit from	استفاده کردن	economy	اقتصاد
hour glass- shaped tea glasses	استکان	ocean	اقیانوس
studio	استودیو	now	اکنون
spinach	اسفناج،	now	الآن
name, title	اسم	of course	البته
(lit. family name) surname	اسم فامیل	Germany	آلمان
sky	آسمان	bangles	آلنگو
cook, chef	آشپز	now	اما
kitchen	آشپزخانه	examination	امتحان
		to come, arrive	آمدن
		order, command, request	امر

today	امروز	he or she	او
this year	امسال	to sing	آواز خواندن
tonight	امشب	to bring, fetch	آوردن
college	آموزشگاه	first	اول
hope	امید	stop (as in bus stop), station	ایستگاه
I hope	امیدوارم		
that	آن	they	ایشان
the other one	آن یکی دیگر	this	این
pomegranate	انار	here	اینجا
to choose	انتخاب کردن	future, next	آینده
there, that place	آنجا		
fig	انجیر	with, by	ب با
size, amount	اندازه	despite the fact that	با اینکه
little, a bit	انک		
as if	انگار	despite the fact that	با وجودیکه
finger (or toe)	انگشت	loyal, faithful	با وفا
ring	انگشتر	father	بابا
grape	انگور	to lose	باختن
they (their, them as possessor)	آنها	wind	باد
slow, slowly	آهسته	aubergine, eggplant	بادنجان
native of; to have a liking for something	اهل	rain	باران
		rainy	بارانی
importance, significance	اهمیت	narrow, slender	باریک

open	باز	revolting (in taste)	بدمزه
to open	باز کردن	without	بدون
bazaar, market	بازار	to return	برگشتن
game, play	بازی	brother	برادر
ancient	باستانی	for	برای
garden	باغ	some	برخی
zoo	باغ وحش	to take, carry away	بردن
small garden	باغچه	snow	برف
up	بالا	snowy	برفی
further up	بالتر	electricity	برق
clever, bright	باهوش	electric	برقی
excuse me, forgive me	ببخشید!	bronze	برنز
tiger	ببر	large, big, great	بزرگ
childhood, childlike behaviour	بچگی	bigger	بزرگتر
child	بچه	biggest, largest	بزرگترین
fireplace, open fire	بخاری دیواری	to tie up, wrap; to close, shut	بستن
bad	بد	ice cream	بستنی
unfortunate, unlucky	بدبخت	parcel	پسته
unfortunately	بدبختانه	to your health	بسلامتی
smelly, pungent	بدبو	many, much, very	بسیار
nasty, mean, deceitful	بدجنس	plate	پُشقاب

then, next	بعَد	unfaithful, disloyal	بی وفا
later	بعْداً	rude, uncouth	بی ادب
afternoon	بعْدَازْظَهْرٍ	for no good reason, pointlessly	بی خود- بی خودی
next	بعْدی		
grocer's shop	بقالی	if it's no trouble, please	بی زحمت
tall, high	بلند		
yes	بله	unemployed; not busy	بی کار
ticket	بلیط	undoubtedly	بیترید
purple	بنفش	poor thing, wretched	بیچاره
to	به	outside	بیرون
instead of	به جای	outside	بیرون-خارج
with difficulty	به دشواری	outside	
to be born	به دنیا آمدن	most of, many of [following by an <i>ezafe (e)</i>	بیشتر
by force, forcibly, grudgingly	به زور - به زحمت	more	بیشتر
as pretty as	به قشنگی	sick, unwell; patient	بیمار
sign of exclamation (meaning wonderful, lovely)	به! به!	hospital	بیمارستان
spring	بهار	nose	بینی
better	بهتر		
to be	بودن	foot; leg	پ پا
kiss	بوسه		

lit, favourite meeting-up place, where people hang out	پاتوق	chatterbox obnoxious, bolshy	پرحرف پررو
cloth, material	پارچه	question	پرسش
last year	پارسال	bird, fowl	پرنده
park	پارک	to fly	پرواز کردن
car park	پارکینگ	butterfly	پروانه
answer, reply	پاسخ	to jump	پریدن
overcoat, winter coat	پالتو	day before yesterday	پریروز
capital city	پایتخت	physician, doctor	پزشک
autumn	پاییز	so, in that case,	پس
down, below	پایین	therefore, then	
to cook	پختن		
father	پدر	to take back, get back, retrieve	پس گرفتن
grandfather	پدربزرگ		
father-in-law (wife's father)	پدرزن	day after tomorrow	پس فردا
father-in-law (husband's father)	پدرشوهر	to post	پست کردن
		postman	پستچی
		post office	پستخانه
full of	پُر آذ	boy, son	پسر
to fill	پر کردن	back, behind	پشت
oranges	پرتقال	one after the other	پشت سر هم
chatting too much	پرچربی		

plaque, door number	پلاک	before, prior to	پیش از
window	پنجره	message	پیغام
Thursday	پنجشنبه		ت
cheese	پنیر	until, up to	تا
next to, beside	پهلوی	as long as	تا وقتیکه
wide	پهن	theatre	تئاتر
winter	پوتین	summer	تابستان
snowboots		date; history	تاریخ
skin	پوست	historic	تاریخی
to wear	پوشیدن	dark	تاریک
money	پول	fresh	تازه
rich, wealthy	پولدار	hill	تپه
continuously	پیاپی	trade	تجارت
on foot	پیاده	bed	تختخواب
sidewalk, pavement	پیاده رو	reduction, discount	تخفیف
going for a walk	پیاده روی	to give discount	تخفیف دادن
onion	پیاز	eggs	تخم مرغ
message	پیام	wet	تر
to find	پیدا کردن	scales	ترازو
old	پیر	order	ترتیب
shirt; dress	پیراهن	hesitation, reluctantly	تردید
to (used for people: going to s.o.); at	پیش	fear	ترس
		coward, scared	ترسو

sour	تُرَش	lazy	تَنْبَل
to leave; give up	تَرْك كَرْدَن	spicy, hot	تَنْد
thirsty	تَشْنَه	fast, quick; fast, quickly	تَنْدُ
to decide (lit. take decisions)	تَصْمِيمِ گِرِفْتَن	alone	تَنْهَا
exchange of niceties	تَعَارُف	to; you (sing.)	تُو
to be surprised	تَعَجُّب كَرْدَن	to be able to	تَوَانِسْتَن
to describe, give detailed account	تَعْرِيف كَرْدَن	ball	تَوَب
closed, shut	تَعْطِيل	to explain	تَوْضِيح دَادَن
holidays, vacation	تَعْطِيلَات	birth (also birthday)	تَوَلَّد
approximately, nearly	تَقْرِيْباً	inside, into	تَوَى
bitter	تَلْخ		ث
telephone	تَلْفَن	seconds	ثَانِيَه
to make a call, telephone	تَلْفَن كَرْدَن / زَدَن		ج
television	تَلُوْزِيُون	place	جَا
to watch, look at	تَمَاشَا كَرْدَن	places (pl.)	جَا هَا
all of the ...	تَمَام	spacious	جَادَار
to finish, complete	تَمَام كَرْدَن	vacuum cleaner	جَارُوْبِرْقِي
stamp	تَمْبِر	interesting	جَالِب
practice, exercises	تَمْرِيْن	soul, life, term of endearment after proper names	جَان
to practise	تَمْرِيْن كَرْدَن		
clean	تَمِيْز	some places	جَاهَايِي
to clean	تَمِيْز كَرْدَن	(indefinite pl.)	

where	جاییکه	world	جهان
really, seriously	جداً	tourist	جهانگرد
new	جدید	reply	جواب
apart	جز	young; youth (person)	جوان
island	جزیره	jewellery	جواهر
party, celebration	جشن	chicken, baby bird	جوجه
festival	جشنواره	type, kind	جور
box	جعبه	socks	جوراب
parsley	جعفری		چ
geography	جغرافی	fat	چاق
pair; mate	جفت	kitchen or other types of knife	چاقو
cover for book; volume	جلد		
meetings, sessions (pl.)	جلسات	chin	چانه
meeting, one session	جلسه	tea	چای
front	جلو	left	چپ
prevention	جلوگیری	umbrella	چتر
in front of, by	جلوی	why?	چرا؟
Friday	جمعه	light, lamp	چراغ
population	جمعیت	stuck down	چسباندن
republic	جمهوری	eyes	چشم
war	جنگ	ophthalmic physician	چشمپزشک
forest	جنگل	spring	چشمه
south	جنوب	how was it?	چطور بود؟

why? why do you ask? (idiomatic)	چطور مگر	because	چونکه
how? how come?	چطور؟	what	چی؟
how are you?	چطوری؟	something	چیزی
how	چقدر		ح
how much? how long?	چقدر؟	now, presently	حالا
hammer	چکش	definitely	حتماً
several, a few	چند	even	حتی
how many?	چند تا	letters of alphabet; spoken word	حرف
a few weeks ago	چند هفته پیش	to speak, talk	حرف زدن
how many?	چند؟	profession	حرفه
several	چندین	letters (pl.)	حروف
fork	چنگال	bath, bathroom	حمام
what kind?, sort?	چه جور؟	what a pity, what a shame	حیف
what year?	چه سالی؟		
what did you do?	چه می کردید؟	animal	حیوان
what!; how ...!	چه!		خ
what?	چه؟	outside	خارج از
four	چهار	foreign, foreigner	خارجی
Wednesday	چهارشنبه	dust, earth, soil	خاک
fourth	چهارم	grey	خاکستری
wooden	چوبی	maternal aunt	خاله
because	چون	switch off, silent, dark	خاموش

home made	خانگی	private, confidential	خصوصی
lady, madam, term of address for women	خانم	line	خط
house, home	خانه	danger	خطر
family	خانواده	dangerous	خطرناک
Middle East	خاورمیانه	quiet, free of people	خلوت
caviar	خاویار	Persian Gulf	خلیج فارس
news	خبر	toothpaste	خمیردندان
to have news	خبر داشتن	smilingly, cheerfully	خندان
funeral	ختم	funny (lit. with laughter)	خنده دار
goodbye, farewell	خداحافظ	cool	خُنک
god bless, goodbye, farewell	خدانگهدار	dormitory, hall of residence	خوابگاه
to go off; to break down	خراب شدن	to sheep	خوابیدن
sweet melon	خریزه	singer	خواننده
small change	خرد	sister	خواهر
a bit, just a little, a touch	خُرده	to ask politely, request	خواهش کردن
rabbit	خرگوش	good, nice, pleasant	خوب
to buy	خریدن	biro, ballpoint pen	خودکار
the Caspian Sea	خزر	fountain pen	خودنویس
tired	خسته	to eat; to drink	خوردن
dry, arid	خشک	to have had a good time	خوش گذشتن
with enmity, angrily	خصمانه		

polite, pleasant exchanges	خوش و بش	story, account of	داستان
welcome	خوش آمد	hot	داغ
you are welcome	خوش آمدید	bridegroom	داماد
kind, honest, decent	خوش جنس	vet	دامپزشک
fortunate, happy	خوشبخت	skirt	دامن
luckily, fortunately	خوشبختانه	outskirts	دامنه
I'm happy to meet you	خوشبختم	to know	دانستن
fragrant, nice smelling	خوشبو	student	دانشجو
happy, cheerful	خوشحال	university	دانشگاه
pretty	خوشگل	circle	دایره
delicious, tasty	خوشمزه	encyclopaedia	دایره المعارف
blood	خون	maternal uncle	دایی
street, avenue	خیابان	girl, daughter	دختر
tailor's, dressmaker's	خیاطی	cousin; daughter of maternal aunt	دخترخاله
mind, imagination	خیال	in, at, inside	در
much, very, many	خیلی	door, gate	در
very good	خیلی خوب	to get or take something out, bring out	درآوردن
		while	در حالیکه
		to knock	در زدن
inside, within	داخل	percentage	در صد
to give	دادن	long	دراز
chemist, pharmacy	داروخانه	about	درباره

to be printed, published	درج شدن	teeth	دندان
tree	درخت	dentist	دندانپزشک
lesson	درس	dental technician	دندانساز
to study	درس خواندن	world	دُنیا
correct, right, exact	درست	mouth	دهان
to fix, mend	درُست کردن	tenth	دهم
greetings	درود	two or three hours	دو سه ساعت
inside	درون - داخل	Monday	دو شنبه
sea	دریا	again	دوباره
lake	دریاچه	bicycle	دوچرخه
very big sea	دریای خیلی بزرگ	far, faraway	دور
hand	دست	binoculars	دوربین
bracelet	دستبند	photographic camera	دوربین عکاسی
difficult	دُشوار	friend	دوست
to tell off, rebuke, argue	دعوا کردن	to like	دوست داشتن
to invite	دَعوت کردن	friendly	دوستانه
stand, kiosk	دکه	government	دولت
brave	دلیر	second	دوم
next to, near	دَم	to see	دیدن
time to time	دمادم	yesterday	دیروز
to look for, search for	دنبال...گشتن	late	دیروقت
		last night	دیشب

no longer (with negative verb), no more	دیگر	to dance	رقصیدن
		colour, shade, dye	رنگ
other	دیگر	to paint, colour in	رنگ زدن کردن
	ر	visa	رواید
(direct object marker)	را	river	رودخانه
comfortable	راحت	day	روز
to be relieved, become comfortable	راحت شدن	daily	روزانه
		good day	روزبخیر
radio	رادیو	newspaper	روزنامه
straight, true, right	راست	newsagent's	روزنامه فروشی
to drive	رانندگی کردن	Russian	روس
way, path, road	راه	light, bright, switched on	روشن
corridor, hallway	راهرو	oil	روغن
name of legendary horse	رخش	on, on top of	روی
to pass by; to fail	رد شدن	beard	ریش
rose	رُز		
to deliver; to give a lift	رساندن	language (tongue)	زبان
official	رسمی	rough	زبر
to arrive; to reach	رسیدن	Zoroastrian	زرتشتی
to go	رفتن	yellow	زرد
pal, close friend, comrade	رفیق	clever	زرنگ

ugly	زشت	quiet, silent	ساکت
earthquake	زلزله	year	سال
winter	زِمِستان	year(s) ago	سالِ پیش
ground, floor, earth, land	زمین	healthy	سالم
surface, land	زمینی	(lit. salon) hall, big room	سَالِن
wife, woman	زَن	basket	سَبَد
wasp	زنبور	green	سبز
honey bee	زنبورعسل	herbs	سبزی
life	زِنْدِگی	greengrocer's	سبزی فروشی
to live	زندگی کردن	vegetables	سبزیجات
soon, early	زود	vegetarian	سبزیخوار
much, very	زیاد	moustache	سبیل
pretty (beautiful)	زیبا	grateful	سپاسگزار
olives	زیتون	then	سپس
under, beneath	زیر	star	ستاره
ashtray	زیرسیگاری	difficult	سخت
	س	speech, delivered lecture	سخنرانی
question	سؤال	at the head of, at the top of, at	سِر
building	ساختمان	head	سِر
to build, make, construct	ساختن	red, crimson	سُرُخ
(here) o'clock, hour of	ساعت	cold	سَرْد
four o'clock	ساعتِ چهار	speed	سرعت

hobby	سرگرمی		ش
cold (noun)	سرما	branch, stem	شاخه
embassy	سفارت	happy	شاد
special, registered	سفارشی	poet	شاعر
travel, journey	سفر	supper, dinner	شام
to travel	سفر کردن	comb; shoulders	شانه
bon voyage	سفر بخیر	perhaps	شاید
white	سفید	night	شب
dog	سگ	goodnight	شب بخیر
hello	سلام	brave, courageous	شجاع
hairdresser's, barber	سلمانى	personal, private	شخصى
heavy	سنگین	to become; to happen	شدن
Sunni	سُنی	to begin, start	شروع شدن
Tuesday	سه شنبه	to wash	شستن
riding	سواری	poetry	شعر
needle	سوزن	sugar	شکر
beetle	سوسک	to break	شکستن
political	سیاسی	broken	شکسته
black	سیاه	chocolate	شکلات
apple	سیب	trousers	شلوار
potato	سیب زمینی	busy, crowded	شلوغ
garlic	سیر	you (pl.)	شما
full, satiated	سیر	number	شماره
cinema	سینما	telephone	شماره تلفن
tray	سینی	number	

north	شمال	hundred	صد
northeast	شمال شرقی	sound, noise	صدا
northern	شمالی	peace	صلح
to recognize	شناختن	chair	صندلی
to swim	شناکردن	pink	صورتی
Saturday	شنبه		
to hear	شنیدن		ط
city, cities	شهر (pl.) شهرها	melon	طالبی
salty, savoury	شور	level, floor	طبقه
husband	شوهر	nature	طبیعت
milk	شیر	designer	طراح
sweet	شیرین	side, direction	طرف
confectionery	شیرینی	supporter	طرفدار
glass	شیشه	golden	طلایی
(lit. Satan) naughty	شیطان	long	طولانی
Shi'ite	شیعه		ع
		excellent, superb	عالی
	ص	bride	عروس
owner; landlord/landlady	صاحبخانه	doll	عروسک
morning	صبح	wedding	عروسی
good morning	صبح بخیر	dear	عزیز
breakfast	صبحانه	my dear	عزیزم
stage	صحنه	honey	عسل
		love	عشق

romantic, lovey-dovey	عِشْقِي		ف
angry	عِصْبَانِي	French	فِرَانْسِي
anger	عِصْبَانِيَت	to provide; to bring together	فِرَاهِمِ آمَدَن
afternoon tea, snack	عِصْرَانِه		
good afternoon	عِصْرِ بَخِير	tomorrow	فِرْدَا
back	عِقْب	to send	فِرِيسْتَادَن
photographer	عِكَّاس	carpet	فِرِش
photography	عِكَّاسِي	form	فِرْم
photograph	عِكْس	to sell	فِرُوخْتَن
scientific	عِلْمِي	airport	فِرُوْدِگَاه
paternal aunt	عَمَه	store, department store	فِرُوْشْگَاه
paternal uncle	عَمُو	only	فَقَط
public	عَمُوْمِي	poor	فَقِير
to change, exchange, replace	عَوَضِ كَرْدَن	thought, idea	فِكْر
religious or traditional celebration	عِيد	to think	فِكْرِ كَرْدَن
glasses	عَيْنَك	pepper	فِلْفِل
		cup	فِنْجَان
		film	فِيلْم
	غ		
food	غِذَا		ق
west	غَرْب	spoon	قَاشَق
western	غَرْبِي	carpet	قَالِي
sorrow, grief	غَمَصِه	small rugs	قَالِيچِه
et al., etc., and others	غَيْرِه	old (not for people)	قَدِيمِي

appointment arrangement	قرار	postcard	کارت پستال
red, crimson	قرمز	factory	کارخانه
century	قرن	knife (cutlery)	کارد
beautiful	قشنگ	workshop	کارگاه
butcher's	قصابی	worker, labourer	کارگر
train	قطار	employee (here cashier)	کارمند
thick	قطور	bowl	کاسه
lock	قفل	if only, would that . . .	کاش
heart	قلب	to plant, sow	کاشتن
pen	قلم	paper	کاغذ
coffee	قهوه	sufficient, enough	کافی
brown	قهوه ای	garlic sausage, mortadella	کالباس
coffee house	قهوه خانه	matches	کبریت
teapot	قوری	book	کتاب
scissors	قیچی	library	کتابخانه
price, value	قیمت	books	کتاب
	ک	kettle	کتری
present, gift	کادو	where?	کجا؟
jobs, work, things that keep one busy	کار	where in?	کجای؟
to be busy, to have things to do	کار داشتن	from where? (re nationality)	کجایی؟
to work	کار کردن	which?	کدام؟
card	کارت	marrow, courgette	کدو
		pumpkin	کدو تنبل

butter	کَرِه	short (brief)	کوتاه
sphere	کُرِه	smaller	کوچکتر
someone; no one (with negative verb)	کسی	side street	کوچه
ship	کشتی	tiny, very small	کوچولو
country	کشور	child	کودک
shoe shop	کفاشی	mountain	کوه
hat	کلاه	mountainside	کوهستان
cottage, a small house	کلبه	mountainous	کوهستانی
thick	کلفت	when?	کی؟
word	کلمه	who, whom?	کی؟
key	کلید	bag	کیف
church	کلیسا	cake	کیک
little	کم		ک
low-fat	کم چربی	sometimes	گاهی
comedy	کمدی	to put, place;	گذاشتن
belt	کمربند	to allow	
shy, bashful	کمر	to pass by	گذشتن
to help, assist	کمک کردن	cat	گربه
a little	کمی	neck	گردن
rare	کمیاب	hungry	گرسنه
edges of, next to, on the banks of	کنار	to grab, catch, take	گرفتن
that	که	warm (hot)	گرم
old (as in rags)	کهنه	heat	گرما

necklace	گردنبند	clothing	لباس
in tears, tearfully	گریان	please	لطفاً
tears	گریه	dictionary	لغتنامه
to cry	گریه کردن	lemon	لیمو
to say, tell	گفتن	glass, tumbler	لیوان
flower (arch. roses)	گل		
to plant flowers	گل کاشتن		م
rosewater	کُلاب	we, us	ما
pear	کُلابی	noisy kiss	ماچ
flowerpot, vase	گلدان	grandmother	مادربزرگ
florist	گلفروشی	mother-in-law (wife's mother)	مادرزن
throat	گلو	mother-in-law (husband's mother)	مادرشوهر
kelim rugs	کلیم	yoghurt	ماست
tomato	گوجه فرنگی	car	ماشین
sheep	گوسفند	mama, mummy	مامان
ear	گوش	to remain, stay	ماندن
to listen	or گوش کردن گوش دادن	mouth; moon	ماه
meat; flesh	گوشت	honeymoon	ماه عسل
earring	گوشواره	fish	ماهی
	ل	tuna fish	ماهی تن
thin, skinny	لاغر	congratulations!	مبارک!
tulips	لاله	grateful	متشکر
lip	لب	various	متعدد

like, similar to	مِثْل	surface area,	مَسَاحَت
example, for instance	مِثْلًا	expanse	
triangle	مِثْلَث	traveller, passenger	مَسَافِر
free	مِجَانِي	to travel	مُسَافِرَت كَرْدَن
statue	مِجْسَمَه	equal	مِساوِي
magazine	مِجَلَه	mosque	مَسْجِد
well equipped	مِجْهَز	Muslim	مُسْلِمَان
area, neighbourhood, district	مِجْلَه	toothbrush	مِساوَاك
varied, different	مِخْتَلَف	Christian	مَسِيحِيَان (مِسيحِي pl. of)
pencil	مِدَاد	alcoholic drinks	مِشْرُوب
duration	مِدَّت	difficult; problem	مِشْكَل
for a long while	مِدَّتْهَا	to consult	مِشُورَت كَرْدَن
school	مِدْرِسَه	surgery	مِطَب
jam	مِرْيَا	certain, sure	مِطْمَئِن
square	مِرْبَع	temple	مِعْبَد
related, connected	مِرْبُوط	to introduce	مِعْرَفِي كَرْدَن
man	مِرْد	famous	مِعْرُوف
people	مِرْدَم	teacher, instructor	مِعْلَم
<i>merci</i> , thank you	مِرْسِي	usual	مِعْمُول
bird, hen, chicken	مِرْغ	common	مِعْمُولِي
centre	مِرْكَز	shop	مِغَازَه
marble	مِرْمَر	detailed	مِفْصَل
pearl	مِرْوَارِيد	shrine	مِقْبَرَه
		but	مِكَر

nationality	ملیت	Christian era (BCE)	میلادی
possible	ممکن	Monkey	میمون
grateful	ممنون		
me, mine, my	مَنْ		ن
to be waiting for s.t.	منتظر بودن	uncomfortable	ناراحت
home, house	مَنْزِل	orange colour	نارنجی
house warming	مَنْزِلِ مَبَارَكِی	thin, fine	نازک
region	مَنْطِقَه	to be called sth., named sth.	نام داشتن
view	منظره	fiancé(e)	نامزد
moonlight	مَهتاب	letter	نامه
kind	مهربان	bread	نان
important	مُهْم	bakery	نانوایی
party	مِهْمَانِی	lunch	ناهار
hair	مو	not to be	نبودن
to be careful, cautious	مواظب بودن	carpenter's	نجاری
ant	مورچه	thread	نخ
banana	موز	polite no	نخیر
museum	موزه	rate, price	نرخ
music	موسیقی	narcissus	نرگس
mouse	موش	soft, smooth	نرم
wall-to-wall carpet	موکت	near by, close to	نزدیک
carnation	میخک	relatively	نسبتاً
desk, table	میز	directions, address	نشانی

to sit	نشستن	half	نیم...
half	نصف	hemisphere	نیمکره
saucer	نعلبکی		و
mint	نعناع	to enter	وارد شدن
oil	نفت	wild	وحشی
persons	نفر	sport	ورزش
painter	نقاش	athlete, sporty	ورزشکار
painting	نقاشی	person	
cash	نقد	entrance; arrival	ورود
silver	نقره ای	weight	وزن
to look at	نگاه کردن	expanse, surface area	وسعت
anxious, worried, concerned	نگران	means, tools	وسيله
		time	وقت
salt	نمک	to have time	وقت داشتن
no	نه	when, at the time that	وقتی
neither ... nor ...	نه ... نه ...	when	وقتی که - موقعی که
light	نور		- زمانی که
first day of Persian New Year	نوروز	punctual	وقتشناس
		lukewarm	ولرم
drink	نوشابه	however, but	ولی
to write	نوشتن	visa	ویزا
to drink	نوشیدن		
type	نوع		ه
grandchild	نوه	present	هدیه
writer	نویسنده	wherever	هر جای که

all sorts, kinds	هر جور	spouse	همسر
both of us	هر دو	fellow traveller	همسفر
whichever	هر کدامکه	fellow citizen	همشهری
whoever	هر کس که or هر کسیکه	colleague	همکار
whenever	هر وقتیکه	classmate	همکلاس
as soon as possible	هر چه زودتر	all	همه
everyday	هر روز	always	همیشه
never	هرگز	as soon as	همینکه
thousand	هزار	India	هند، هندوستان
seven	هفت	water melon	هندوانه
seventh	هفتم	art	هنر
week	هفته	artistic	هنری
peach	هلو	still, as yet	هنوز
also, too	هم	weather (also air)	هوا
roommate	هم اتاق	aeroplane	هواپیما
with common border, sharing the same border	هم مرز	air	هوایی
that very	همان	never	هیچوقت
there (and then)	همانجا		ی
just as, as	همانطوریکه	either ... or	یا ... یا
companion	همراه	to teach	یاد دادن
neighbour	همسایه (pl. همسایگان)	to learn	یاد گرفتن
frozen	یخ زده	eleven	یازده
fridge	یخچال	ice	یخ
each other	یکدیگر	one of	یکی از
lit. one day	یکروز	one by one	یکی یکی
one year	یکسال	jewish	یهودی pl. یهودیان
Sunday	یکشنبه	slowly, quietly	یواش
		Greece	یونان

.....

English–Persian glossary

a little	کمی - یک کم	ant	مورچه
about	درباره	anxious	نگران
address	آدرس - نشانی	apart	بغیر از
aeroplane	هواپیما	apartment	آپارتمان
afternoon	بعد از ظهر - عصر	apple	سیب
afternoon tea, snack	عصرانه	appointment, arrangement	قرار - قرار ملاقات
again	دوباره	approximately, nearly	تقریباً - نزدیک به
air	هوا	area, neighbourhood, district	محلّه - همسایگی
airport	فرودگاه	art	هنر
alcoholic drinks	مشروب	artistic	هنرمند
all	همه	arrive, reach (to)	رسیدن
all of the . . .	همه - تمام	as if	انگار
all sorts, kinds of	همه جور - همه نوع	as long as	تا وقتی که - تا زمانی که
alone	تنها	as pretty as	به قشنگی
also, too	همچنین، نیز	as soon as	تا - به محض اینکه
always	همیشه	as soon as possible	هر چه زودتر
ancient	قدیمی - باستانی	ashtray	زیرسیگاری
anger	خشم - عصبانیت		
angry	خشمگین - عصبانی		
animal	حیوان - جانور		
answer, reply	پاسخ - جواب		

ask politely, request (to)	خواستن	be careful, cautious (to)	مواظب بودن
at last, in the end	آخر - بالاخره	be printed, be published (to)	چاپ شدن - منتشر شدن
at the head of, at the top of, at	سر	be relieved, become comfortable (to)	راحت شدن
athlete, sporty person	ورزشکار	be surprised (to)	تعجب کردن
aubergine, eggplant	بادنجان	be waiting for something (to)	منتظر شدن
autumn	پاییز - خزان	beard	نان
back	پشت - عقب - ته	beautiful	زیبا - قشنگ - ناز
back, behind	پشت سر	beauty salon	آرایشگاه - سالن زیبایی
bad	بد	because	زیرا - چونکه - برای اینکه
bag	کیف	become, happen (to)	شدن
bakery	نانوایی	become acquainted (with)	آشنا شدن
ball	توپ	bed	تختخواب
banana	موز	bedroom	اتاق خواب
bangles	النگو	beetle	سوسک
basket	سبد	before, prior to	پیش از اینکه - قبل از اینکه
bath (tub)	وان حمام	begin, start (to)	شروع کردن
bathroom	حمام	belt	کمربند
bazaar, market	بازار	better	بهتر - خویتر
be (to)	بودن	bicycle	دوچرخه
be able to (to)	توانستن	bigger	بزرگتر
be born (to)	به دنیا آمدن	biggest, largest	بزرگترین
be busy, have things to do (to)	کارداشتن		
be called something, be named something (to)	نام داشتن		

binoculars	دوربین	bridegroom	داماد
bird, fowl	پرنده - مرغ	bring, fetch (to)	آوردن
bird, hen, chicken	مرغ - جوجه	broken	شکسته
biro, ballpoint pen	خودکار	brother	برادر
birth (also birthday)	تولد	brown	قهوه‌ای
bitter	تلخ	build, make, construct(to)	ساختن
black	سیاه	building	ساختمان - بنا
blood	خون	bus	اتوبوس
blue	آبی	busy, crowded	شلوغ
bon voyage	سفر بخیر	but	اما - ولی
book	کتاب	butcher's	قصاب
books	کتاب - کتاب‌ها	butter	کره
both of us	هر دو - هر دوی ما	butterfly	پروانه
bowl	کاسه - پیاله	buy (to)	خریدن
box	جعبه	by force, forcibly (also grudgingly)	به زور
boy, son	پسر		
bracelet	دستبند		
branch, stem	شاخه	cake	کیک - شیرینی
brave	شجاع - دلیر	capital city	پایتخت
bread	نان	car	ماشین - اتومبیل - نفربر
break (to)	شکستن	card	کارت
breakfast	صبحانه	carnation	گل میخک
brick	آجر	car park	پارکینگ
bride	عروس		

carpenter	نَجَّار	chin	چانه
carpentry	نَجَّارِي	chocolate	شكولات
carpet	فَرش - فالي	choose (to)	انتخاب كردن
carpet (wall to wall)	موكيت	Christian	مسيحي
cash	پول نقد	Christian era (BCE)	ميلادي
Caspian	خزر	church	كليسا
cat	گربه	cinema	سينما
caviar	خاويار	circle	دايره - محفل
centre	مرکز	city, cities	شهر - شهرها
century	قرن	classmate	همکلاسي
certain, sure	مطمئن - حتم داشتن	clean	پاک - پاکيزه - تميز
chair	صندلي	clean (to)	تميز كردن
change, exchange, replace (to)	عوض كردن	clever	باهوش - زرنگ
chatterbox	پرحرف - وراج - پرچانه	closed, shut	بسته
cheep	آرزان	cloth, material	پارچه
cheerful	شادمان - خوشحال	clothing	لباس
cheese	پنير	cloud	ابر
chemist, pharmacy	داروخانه	cloudy	ابري
chicken, baby bird	جوجه	coffee	قهوه
child	بچه - فرزند	coffee house	قهوه خانه - کافه
childhood	بچگي	cold	سرد
childlike behaviour	بچگانه	cold (noun)	سردی
		colleague	همکار
		college	کالج - دانشکده - آموزشگاه

colour, shade, dye	رَنگ	cry (to)	گَریه کردن
comb; shoulders	شانه	cup	فَنجان
come, arrive (to)	آمدن	knife (cutlery)	کارد
comedy	کُمِدی		
comfortable	راحت	daily	روزانه
common	عادی - معمولی	dance	رَقصیدن
companion	مونس - همنشین	danger	خَطَر
confectionery	شیرینی	dangerous	خَطَرناک
congratu- lations!	تَبْرِیک - مِبارک	dark	تاریک - تیره
consult (to)	مَشوَرَت کردن	date; history	تاریخ
continously	مُدَام - پیوسته - یکبند	day	روز
cook, chef	آشپز	day after tomorrow	پس فردا
cook (to)	پختن - آشپزی کردن	day before yesterday	پریروز
cool	خُنک	dear	عزیز
correct, right, exact	دُرُست	decide (lit. take decisions) (to)	تَصمیم گرفتن
corridor, hall	راهرو - هال	definitely	حَتَمًا
cottage, a small house	کُلبه - آلونک	delicious, tasty	خوشمزه
country	کُشور	deliver; give a life (to)	رِساندن
cousin, daughter of maternal aunt	دُخترخاله	dental technician	دندانساز
cover for books; volume	جِلد	dentist	دندانپزشک
coward, scared	ترسو - بزدل	describe, give detailed account (to)	تَعریف کردن
		desk, table	میز

despite the fact that	با وجودیکه - با وجود اینکه	earring	گوشواره
detailed	مفصل	earthquake	زلزله - زمینلرزه
dictionary	فرهنگ - لغتنامه	easy	ساده - آسان
difficult	سخت - دشوار - پیچیده	eat; drink (to)	خوردن
difficult; problem	مشکل	economy	اقتصاد
(direct object marker)	را	edges of , next to, on the banks of	لب - کنار - لبه
directions, address	نشانی - آدرس	eggs	تخم مرغ
dog	سگ	either . . . or	یا . . . یا
doll	عروسک	electric	برقی
door, gate	در	electricity	برق
dormitory, hall of residence	خوابگاه	eleven	یازده
down, below	زیر - پایین	embassy	سفارت
drink	نوشابه - آشامیدنی	employee	کارمند
drink (to)	نوشیدن - آشامیدن	encyclopaedia	دایره المعارف
drive (to)	راندن - رانندگی	enter (to)	وارد شدن
dry, arid	خشک	entrance; arrival	ورود - ورودیه
duration	دوران - طول	equal	برابر - مساوی
dust, earth, soil	خاک	equipment, furniture	اساس - اسباب - وسایل
each other	دیگری - همدیگر	et al., etc.; others	و غیره
ear	گوش	even	حتی
		everyday	هر روز

examination	امتحان	father-in-law (wife's father)	پدرزن
excellent, superb	عالی	favourite meeting place where people hang out	پاتوق
exchange of niceties	تعارف	fear	ترس
exclamation (meaning 'wonderful, lovely')	به! به!	fellow citizen	همشهری
excuse me, forgive me	ببخشید	fellow traveller	همسفر
expanse, surface area	وسعت	festival	جشنواره - فستیوال
experiment, test	آزمایش	fiancé(e)	نامزد
explain (to)	توضیح دادن	fig	انجیر
eyebrow	آبرو	fill (to)	پر کردن
eyes	چشم	film	فیلم
factory	کارخانه	find (to)	پیدا کردن
familiar	آشنا	finger (or toe)	انگشت
family	خانواده - فامیل	finish, complete (to)	تمام کردن
family name, surname	اسم فامیل	fireplace, open fire	بخاری دیواری - شومینه
famous	معروف	first	اول
far, faraway	دور	fish	ماهی
fast, quick; fast, quickly	تند - سریع	florist	گل فروش
fat	چاق - پروار	flower (arch. roses)	گل
father	پدر	flowerpot, vase	گلدان
father-in-law (husband's father)	پدرشهر	fly (to)	پرواز کردن

food	غذا - خوراکی	friend	دوست - رفیق
foot; leg	پا	friendly	دوستانه
for	برای	from, of, through	از
for a long while	مدتها	from where?	کجایی؟
for example, for instance	مثلاً	(re nationality)	اهل کجا؟
for no good reason, point- lessly	بیخود - بیخودی - بیدلیل	front	جلو
foreign, foreigner	خارجی	frozen	یخزده
forest	جنگل	fruit juice	آبمیوه
fork	چنگال	full, satiated	سیر
form	فرم - شکل	full of	پر از
formal prose	نثر ادبی	funeral	خاکسپاری
fortunate, happy	خوشبخت	funny	خنده‌دار
fountain pen	خودنویس	(lit. with laughter)	
four	چهار	further up	بالا تر
four o'clock	ساعت چهار	future, next	آینده
fourth	چهارم	game, play	بازی
fragrant, nice smelling	خوشبو	garden	باغ
free	آزاد - رایگان	garlic	سیر
French	فرانسه - فرانسوی	garlic sausage, mortadella	کالباس
fresh	تازه	gentleman, sir	آقا
Friday	جمعه - آدینه	geography	جغرافی
fridge	یخچال	Germany	آلمان
		get married (to)	ازدواج کردن

get or take something out, bring out (to)	در آوردن	grandchild	نوه
girl, daughter	دختر	grandfather	پدربزرگ
give (to)	دادن	grandmother	مادربزرگ
give discount (to)	تخفیف دادن	grape	انگور
glass	شیشه	grateful	ممنون
glass, tumbler	لیوان	Greece	یونان
glasses	عینک	green	سبز
go (to)	رفتن	greengrocer's	سبزی فروش
go off, break down (to)	خراب شدن	greetings	درود - سلام و احوالپرسی
god bless, goodbye, farewell	خدا حافظ	grey	خاکستری
going for a walk	پیاده روی	grocer's shop	بقالی
golden	طلایی	ground, floor, earth, land	زمین
good afternoon	عصر بخیر	hair	مو - زلف - گیسو
good, nice, pleasant	خوب	hairdresser's, barber	سالمانی
good day	روزیخیر	half	نیم - نصف
good morning	صبح بخیر	hammer	چکش
good night	شب بخیر	hand	دست
goodbye, farewell	خدا حافظ - بدرود	happy	خوشحال - شاد
government	دولت	hat	کلاه
grab, catch, take (to)	گرفتن	have had a good time (to)	خوش گذشتن
gradually, 'slowly, slowly', 'calmly, calmly'	یواش یواش	have news (to)	خبر داشتن

have time (to)	وقت داشتن - فُرصَت داشتن	horse	اَسب
he or she	او	hospital	بیمارستان
head	سر	hot	گرم - داغ
healthy	سالم	hour glass-shaped tea glasses	استکان
hear (to)	شنیدن	house warming	مَنزِل مَبَارکی
heart	قلب	house, home	خانه - منزل
heat	گرم - حرارت	how . . .!	چقدر...
heavy	سنگین	how are you? (informal)	چطوری
hello	سلام	how? how come?	چطور؟
help, assist (to)	کُکم کردن	how many?	چند تا؟
hemisphere	نیم کره	how much? how long?	چقدر؟
herbs	سبزی	how was it? (idiomatic)	چطور بود؟
here	اینجا	however, but	ولی - اما
hesitation	مکث - تامل	hundred	صد
hill	تپه	hungry	گرسنه
historic	تاریخی	husband	شوهر
hobby	سرگرمی		
holidays, vacation	تعطیلات		
home, house	خانه - منزل	I hope	امیدوارم
home made	خانگی	I'm happy to meet you	خوشبختم
honey	عسل		
honey bee	زنبور عسل	ice	یخ
honeymoon	ماه عسل	ice cream	بستنی
hope	امید		

if it's no trouble, please	لُطْفاً - بِي زَحْمَتِ	Jewish	يَهُودِي
if only, would that . . .	كَاش - كَاشِكِي	jobs, work, things that keep one busy	كَار
importance, significance	أَهْمِيَّة	jump (to)	پَرِيدَن
important	مُهْم	just as, as	هَمَانطُورَكِه
in front of, by	جَلُوبِي - رُوبُورُوبِي	kelim rugs	كَلِيم
in tears, tearfully	گَرِيَان	kettle	كَتَرِي
in, at, inside	دَر	key	كَلِيد
India	هِنْدُوسْتَان	kind	مِهْرِيَان
information	اطْلَاعَات	kiss	بُوسِه - مَاج
inside	دَاخِل - دَرُون	kitchen	أَشْهَزْخَانِه
inside, into	تَو - تَوِي	kitchen or other types of knife	چَاقُو
instead of	بِه جَاي - عَوَّضِ	knock (to)	دَر زَدَن
interesting	جَالِب	know (to)	دَانِسْتَن
introduce (to)	مُعْرِفِي كَرْدَن - أَشْنَا كَرْدَن	lady, madam, term of address for women	خَانِم
invite (to)	دَعَوَت كَرْدَن	lake	دَرِيَاچِه
is	أَسْت	language (tongue)	زَبَان
island	جَزِيرِه	large, big, great	بَزْرِك
jam	مُرِيَا	last	أَخِر - أَخْرِي
jewellery	جَوَاهِر	last night	دِيشَب
		last year	پَارَسَال

late	دیر - دیر وقت	lock	قفل
later	دیرتر	long	طولانی
lazy	تنبّل	look at (to)	نگاه کردن
learn (to)	یادگرفتن - آموختن	look for, search for (to)	دنبال... گشتن
leave, give up (to)	رها کردن - ول کردن	lose (to)	گم کردن
left	چپ	love	عشق - محبت
lemon	لیمو	low fat	کم چربی
lesson	درس	loyal, faithful	با وفا
letter	نامه	luckily, fortunately	خوشبختانه
letters of alphabet; spoken word	حروف الفبا	lukewarm	ولرم
level, floor	طبقه	lunch	ناهار
library	کتابخانه	magazine	مجله
life	زندگی	make a call, telephone (to)	تلفن کردن
light	نور - روشنایی	make mistakes (to)	اشتباه کردن
light, bright, switched on	روشن	mama, mummy	مامان - ماما
light, lamp	چراغ	man	مرد
like (to)	دوست داشتن	manners, politeness	آداب - تربیت
line	خط	many, much, very	خیلی - بسیار
lip	لب	marble	مرمر
listen (to)	گوش دادن	marrow, courgette	کدو
little	کوچک - کوچولو		
little, a bit	کمی		
live (to)	زندگی کردن		

master, teacher	اُستاد	morning	صُبح
matches	کِیریت	mosque	مَسْجِد
maternal aunt	خاله	most of, many of	خیلی از -
maternal uncle	دایی		بسیاری از
mausoleum	آرامگاه - مَقْبَره	mother-in-law (husband's mother)	مادرشوهر
maxim	آرمان	mother-in-law (wife's mother)	مادرزن
me, mine, my	مَن	mountain	کوه
means, tools	وَسَائِل - اَسباب	mountainous	کوهستانی
meat; flesh	گوشت	mountainside	کوهستان
meeting, one session	جَلِسه	mouse	موش
meetings, sessions	جَلِسات	moustache	سبیل
melon	طالِبی	mouth	دَهان
mend, fix (to)	دُرست کردن	much, very	خیلی - بسیار
message	پیام - پیغام	museum	موزه
Middle East	خاورِ میانه	music	موسیقی
milk	شیر	Muslim	مُسلمان
mind, imagination	تَصَوُّر - خیال	my dear	عزیزم
mint	نَعناع		
mistake	اِشْتِباه	name, title	نام - لَقَب
Monday	دو شنبه	narcissus	کُلِ نَرگِیس
money	پول	narrow, slender	باریک
monkey	میمون	nasty, mean, deceitful	بَدجنس
month; moon	ماه	nationality	مِلّیت
moonlight	مَهتاب		
more	بیشتر		

native of; have a liking for something	أهل	now	حالا - الآن - اکنون
nature	طبیعت	number	عدد - شماره
near by, close to	نزدیک	obnoxious, bolshy	پُرو
neck	گردن	ocean	اقیانوس
necklace	گردنبند	of course	البته
needle	سوزن	office	اداره - دفتر
neighbour	همسایه	official	رسمی
neither . . . nor . . .	نه . . . نه . . .	often	اغلب - بیشتر اوقات
never	هرگز	oil (as in cooking or motor)	روغن
new	نو - جدید - تازه	oil (as in petroleum)	نفت
news	اخبار	old	پیر
newsagent's	روزنامه‌فروشی	old (as in rags)	کهنه
newspaper	روزنامه	old (not people)	قدیمی
next	بعدی	olives	زیتون
next to, beside	کنار - پهلو	on, on top of	روی - بالای
night	شب	on foot	پیاده
no	نه - نخیر	one after the other	یکی پس از دیگری - پشت سر هم
no longer, no more (with negative verb)	دیگر	one by one	یکی یکی
noisy kiss	ماچ	one day	یکروز
north	شمال	one of	یکی از
northeast	شمال شرقی	one year	یک سال
northern	شمالی	onion	پیاز
nose	بینی - دماغ	only	فقط - تنها
not to be	نبودن		

open	باز- گشوده	park	پارک - باغ ملی
open (to)	باز کردن- گشودن	parsley	جعفری
ophthalmic physician	چشم‌پزشک	party	مهمانی
orange (colour)	نارنجی	party, celebration	جشن
oranges	پرتقال	pass by (to)	گذشتن
order	ترتیب	pass by; fail (to)	رد شدن
order, command, request	دستور - فرمان	paternal aunt	عمه
other	دیگر	paternal uncle	عمو
outside	بیرون	peace	صلح
outskirts	دامنه	peach	هلو
overcoat, winter coat	پالتو	pear	کلابی
owner, landlord/ lady	صاحبخانه	pearl	مروارید
		pen	قلم
		pencil	مداد
		people	مردم
		pepper	فلفل
		percentage	درصد
paint, colour in (to)	رنگ کردن/ زدن	perhaps	شاید
painter	نقاش	period of stay, residence	اقامت
painting	نقاشی	permission	اجازه
pair; mate	جفت	Persian Gulf	خلیج فارس
pal, close friend, comrade	رفیق	personal, private	شخصی - خصوصی
paper	کاغذ	persons	نفر
parcel	بسته	photograph	عکس

photographer	عكاس	post (to)	پست کردن
photographic camera	دوربین عکاسی	post office	پستخانه
photography	عکاسی	postcard	کارت پستال
physician, doctor	پزشک - دُکتر	postman	پستچی
pink	صورتی	potato	سیبزمینی
place	جا	practice, exercises	تمرین
places (pl.)	جاها	practise (to)	تمرین کردن
plant, sow (to)	کاشتن	present	حاضر
plaque, door number	پلاک - شماره	present, gift	هدیه - کادو
plate	بشقاب	pretty	زیبا - قشنگ
please	لطفاً - خواهش می‌کنم - بی زحمت	prevention	پیشگیری - جلوگیری
poet	شاعر	price, value	قیمت - بها
poetry	شعر	private, confidential	خصوصی - محرمانه
polite, pleasant exchanges	خوش و بش	profession	شغل
political	سیاسی	provide, bring together (to)	فراهم کردن
pomegranate	انار	public	عمومی
pomegranate juice	آب نار	pumpkin	کدو
poor	بیچاره - بینوا	punctual	وقتشناس - سر وقت
poor thing, wretched	بیچاره - بدبخت	purple	بنفش
population	جمعیت	put, place; allow (to)	گذاشتن
possible	ممکن	question	پرسش - سؤال
		quiet, free of people	خلوت

quiet, silent	ساکت	rich, wealthy	پولدار - ثروتمند - توانگر
rabbit	خرگوش	riding	سواری
radio	رادیو	ring	انگشتر
rain	باران	river	رودخانه
rainy	بارانی	romantic, lovey, dovey	عاشقانه
rare	کمیاب - نایاب	room	اتاق
rate, price	نرخ - قیمت	room (as in space)	جا - فضا
recognize (to)	شناختن	room mate	هم‌اتاقی
red, crimson	سرخ - قرمز	rose	گل سرخ - صورتی
reduction, discount	تخفیف	rose water	گلاب
region	منطقه	rough (to touch)	زیر
related, connected	مربوط	rude, uncouth	بی‌تربیت
relatively	نسبتاً	Russian	روس
religious or traditional celebration	عید		
remain, stay (to)	ماندن	salon, hall, big room	سالن
rent	اجاره - کرایه	salt	نمک
rent (to)	اجاره کردن	salty, savoury	شور
reply	پاسخ - جواب	Satan (meaning naughty)	شیطان
republic	جمهوری	Saturday	شنبه
respect	احترام	saucer	نعلبکی
rest (to)	استراحت کردن	say, tell (to)	گفتن
return (to)	برگشتن	scales	ترازو
revolting (in taste)	بدمزه	school	مدرسه

scientific	علمی	sidewalk, pavement	پیاده‌رو
scissors	قیچی	silk	ابریشم
sea	دریا	silver	نقره
second	دوم	since	از - از وقتیکه
seconds	ثانیه	sing (to)	آواز خواندن
see (to)	دیدن	singer	خواننده
sell (to)	فروختن	sister	خواهر
send (to)	فرستادن	sit (to)	نشستن
seriously	جدی	size, amount	اندازه
seven	هفت	skin	پوست
seventh	هفتم	skirt	دامن
several	چندین	sky	آسمان
several, a few	چند	sleep (to)	خوابیدن
sheep	گوسفند	slow; slowly	آهسته - یواش
Shi'ite	شیعه	small change	پول خرد
ship	کشتی	small garden	باغچه
shirt; dress	پیراهن	small rugs	قالیچه
shop	مغازه - دکان	smaller	کوچکتر
short (brief)	کوتاه	smelly, pungent	بدبو
shrine	امامزاده - مقبره	smilingly, cheerfully	خندان
shy, bashful	کمر - خجالتی	snow	برف
sick, unwell; patient	بیمار - مریض	snowy	برفی
side, direction	جهت - طرف	so, in that case, therefore	پس - بنابراین
sidestreet	کوچه فرعی	then	
		socks	جوراب

soft, smooth	صاف - نرم	spoon	قاشق
some	بعضی	sport	ورزش
some places (indefinite pl.)	جاهایی	spouse	همسر
someone; no one (with negative verb)	کسی - (هیچکس)	spring	بهار
something	چیزی	square (shape)	مربع
sometimes	گاهی - بعضی وقتها	stage	صحنه
soon, early	زود	stamp	تمبر
sorrow, grief	غم - اندوه	stand, kiosk	گیشه - کیوسک
soul, life, term of endearment after proper names	جان	star	ستاره
sound, noise	صدا	statue	مجسمه
sour	ترش	still, as yet	هنوز
south	جنوب	stop (as in bus stop), station	ایستگاه
spacious	جادر	store, department store	فروشگاه
Spain	اسپانیا	story, account of	داستان
speak, talk (to)	حرف زدن	straight, true, right	راست
special, registered	سفارشی	street, avenue	خیابان
speech, delivered lecture	سخنرانی	stuck down	چسبیده
speed	سرعت	student	دانشجو
spicy, hot	تند	studio	استودیو
spinach	اسفناج	study (to)	درس خواندن
		sufficient, enough	کافی
		sugar	شکر
		summer	تابستان
		sun	خورشید - آفتاب

Sunday	يکشنبه	tears	آشک
Sunni	سُنی	teeth	دندان
sunny	آفتابی	telephone	تَلْفُن
supper, dinner	شام	telephone number	شماره تَلْفُن
supporter	پُرفِدار - هُوادار - پِشتیبان	television	تَلویزیون
surface	سَطْح	tell off, rebuke, argue (to)	دعوا کردن - پَرخاش کردن
surface area, expanse	مَسَاحَت	temple	مَعْبَد
surgery (doctor's)	مَطَب	tenth	دَهْم
surgery (operation)	جراحی	thank you	مُتَشکِرَم - مِمْنونَم - سِپاسگزارم
sweet	شیرین	that	آن
sweet melon	خربزه	that very	همان
swim (to)	شنا کردن	theatre	تئاتر - نمایشخانه
switched off, silent, dark	خاموش	then	سپس
		then	آنوقت
tailor's dressmaker's	خیاط	there (and then)	همانجا
take back, get back, retrieve (to)	پس گرفتن	there, that place	آنجا
take, carry away (to)	بُردن	they (their, them as possessor)	آنها - ایشان
tall, high	بُلند	thick	کَلَفَت
tea	چای	thin, fine	نازک
teach (to)	درس دادن	thin, skinny	باریک - لاغر
teacher, instructor	مُعَلِّم - آموزگار	think (to)	فکر کردن
teapot	قوری	thirsty	گرسنه
		this	این

this year	اِمسال	trade	تِجَارَت
thought, idea	فِکَر - نَظَر	train	تَرین - قَطار
thousand	هزار	journey	سَفَر - مُسافِرَت
thread	نخ	travel,	
throat	گلو	travel (to)	سَفَر کردن - مُسافِرَت کردن
Thursday	پنجشنبه	traveller,	مُسافر
ticket	بلیط	passenger	
tie up, wrap, close, shut (to)	بستن	tray	سینی
tiger	ببر	tree	درخت
time	وقت - زَمَان	triangle	مُثلث
time to time	گاه گاه	trousers	شلوار
tiny, very small	کوچولو - کوچک - ریز	Tuesday	سه شنبه
tired	خسته	tulips	لاله
to	به	tuna fish	ماهی تُن
to (used for people: going to s.o.); at	پیش	two or three hours	دو سه ساعت
to your health	به سلامتی	type	نوع - جور
today	امروز	ugly	زشت - بدترکیب
tomato	گوجه فرنگی	umbrella	چتر
tomorrow	فردا	uncomfortable	ناراحت
tonight	امشب	under, beneath	زیر
toothbrush	مسواک	undoubtedly	بدون شک - بی تردید
toothpaste	خمیر دندان	unemployed; not busy	بیکار
tourist	توریست - جهانگرد		

unfaithful, disloyal	بی‌وفا	watch, look at (to)	نگاه - تماشا کردن
unfortunate, unlucky	بدبخت - بدشانس	water	آب
unfortunately	بدبختانه	water melon	هندوانه
university	دانشگاه	way, path, road	راه
until, up	تا	we, us	ما
up	بالا	wear (to)	پوشیدن
use, benefit from (to)	استفاده کردن	weather (also air)	هوا
usual	معمول	wedding	عروسی
		Wednesday	چهارشنبه
		week	هفته
vacuum cleaner	جاروبرقی	weight	وزن
varied, different	متفاوت - مختلف	welcome	خوش آمد
various	گوناگون	well equipped	مجهز
vegetables	سبزیجات	west	غرب
vegetarian	سبزیخوار	western	غربی
very good	خیلی خوب	wet	خیس
vet	دامپزشک	what; how . . .!	چه!
view	منظره	what a pity, what a shame	چه بد! چه حیف!
visa	ویزا - رواید	what kind, sort?	چه نوع؟ چه جور؟
war	جنگ	when	کی؟
warm (hot)	گرم	when, at the time that	وقتی که - هنگامیکه
wash (to)	شستن	whenever	هر وقت
wasp	زنبور		

where?	کُجا؟	worker, labourer	کارگر
wherever	هرجا	workshop	کارگاه
which?	کدام؟	world	دُنیا - جهان
whichever	هرکدام	write (to)	نوِشتن
while	در حالیکه	writer	نوِسنده
white	سفید		
who, whom?	کی؟	year	سال
whoever	هرکس - هرکس - هرکسیکه	year(s) ago	سال(ها) پیش
		yellow	زرد
why? why do you ask? (idiomatic)	چرا؟	yes	بله
		yes (informal), 'yup'	آره
wide	پهن	yesterday	دیروز
wife, woman	زن	yoghurt	ماست
wild	وحشی	you are welcome	خوش آمدید
wind	باد	you (pl.)	شما
window	پنجره	you (sing.)	تو
winter	زِمستان	young; youth (person)	جوان
winter snowboots	پوتین		
with, by	با	zoo	باغ وحش
with common border, sharing the same border	هم مرز	Zoroastrian	زرتشتی
with difficulty	به سختی		
without	بدون - بی		
wooden	چوبی		
word	لُغت - کَلِمه		
work (to)	کار کردن		

.....

Credits

Front cover: © Oliver leedham/Alamy

Back cover and pack: © [Jakub Semeniuk/iStockphoto.com](https://www.iStockphoto.com/Jakub-Semeniuk), © Royalty-Free/Corbis, © [agencyby/iStockphoto.com](https://www.iStockphoto.com/agencyby), © Andy [Cook/iStockphoto.com](https://www.iStockphoto.com/Cook), © Christopher [Ewing/iStockphoto.com](https://www.iStockphoto.com/Ewing), © zebicho – [Fotolia.com](https://www.fotolia.com), © Geoffrey [Holman/iStockphoto.com](https://www.iStockphoto.com/Holman), © Photodisc/Getty Images, © James C. [Pruitt/iStockphoto.com](https://www.iStockphoto.com/Pruitt), © Mohamed Saber – [Fotolia.com](https://www.fotolia.com)

Pack: © Stockbyte/Getty Images

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00–17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at www.teachyourself.com

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 50 million copies sold worldwide – the **Teach Yourself** series includes over 500 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data: a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: on file.

First published in UK 2004 as *Teach Yourself Modern Persian* by Hodder Education, part of Hachette UK, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH.

First published in US 2004 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

This edition published 2010.

The **Teach Yourself** name is a registered trade mark of Hachette UK.

Copyright © Narguess Farzad 2004, 2010

In UK: All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London EC1N 8TS.

In US: All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Typeset by MPS Limited, A Macmillan Company.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, an Hachette UK Company, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author have no

responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant, decent or appropriate.

Hachette UK's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Year 2014 2013 2012 2011 2010